



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



600093710Q

A SMALLER GRAMMAR
OF THE
FRENCH LANGUAGE.

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

- A TEST-BOOK OF FRENCH GRAMMAR.** Some of the Questions are in English, some in French. Short illustrative Exercises are added. At the end will be found a selection of Papers set at various Examinations.

DR. WM. SMITH'S FRENCH COURSE.

THE FRENCH PRINCIPIA. PART I. A FIRST FRENCH COURSE ; containing Grammar, Delectus, Exercises, and Vocabularies. 12mo. 8s. 6d.

FRENCH PRINCIPIA. PART II. A READING BOOK ; containing Fables, Stories, and Anecdotes. Natural History, and Scenes from the History of France. With Grammatical Questions, Notes, and copious Etymological Dictionary. 12mo. 4s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S FRENCH GRAMMAR: a Practical and Historical Grammar of the French Language. By C. HÉRON WALL, late Assistant Master at Brighton College. With an INTRODUCTION by M. LITTRÉ, Member of the French Academy. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

The special aim of this grammar is to produce a book which will work well in schools where Latin and Greek form the principal subjects of study. In its preparation all the latest books in French philology have been carefully studied.

A SMALLER GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE. For the Middle and Lower Forms. Abridged from the above. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

DR. WM. SMITH'S GERMAN COURSE.

GERMAN PRINCIPIA. PART I. A FIRST GERMAN COURSE ; containing a Grammar, Delectus, Exercise Book, and Vocabularies. 12mo. 8s. 6d.

GERMAN PRINCIPIA. PART II. A READING BOOK ; containing Fables, Stories, and Anecdotes, Natural History, and Scenes from the history of Germany. With Grammatical Questions, Notes, and Dictionary. 12mo. 8s. 6d.

A PRACTICAL GERMAN GRAMMAR. With a SKETCH of the HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT of the LANGUAGE and its PRINCIPAL DIALECTS. By Dr. LEONARD SCHMITZ, Classical Examiner in the University of London. Post 8vo. 8s. 6d.

Dr. Wm. Smith's French Course.

~~~~~

**A SMALLER GRAMMAR**

OF THE

**FRENCH LANGUAGE.**

**BY CHARLES HÉRON WALL,**

*Member of the Philological Society; Author of the "STUDENT'S FRENCH GRAMMAR;" of an English Translation of MOLIÈRE, etc.*

**For the Use of the Middle and Lower Forms in Schools.**



**LONDON:**  
**JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.**  
**1878.**

[All rights reserved.]

303. 7. 250. Google





## P R E F A C E .

---

THE present work is an abridgment of the 'Student's French Grammar.' As it is intended for Junior Classes, all the PROSODY, and many of the more difficult parts of the NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS, have been omitted. Still, like its larger companion, it will be found to be both historical and practical. It has stood the test of many years' actual use in large classes.

C. H. W.

HALBRAKE SCHOOL,  
WANDSWORTH COMMON.



# CONTENTS.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

| SECTION                                             | PAGE |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1-4. How French is related to other languages . . . | 1    |

---

## BOOK I.—PHONOLOGY. (§§ 5—82.)

### CHAPTER I. ALPHABET, SYLLABLES, ACCENTS, ETC. (§§ 5—17.)

|                                                   |   |
|---------------------------------------------------|---|
| 5. Names of the letters . . . . .                 | 3 |
| 6. Imperfections of the French alphabet . . . . . | 3 |
| 7. Division of words into syllables . . . . .     | 4 |
| 8. Closed and open syllables . . . . .            | 4 |
| 9. Long and short syllables . . . . .             | 4 |
| 10-13. Graphic accents . . . . .                  | 5 |
| 14. Tonic or force accent in a word . . . . .     | 6 |
| 15. Tonic or force accent in a phrase . . . . .   | 7 |

### NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

|                                                         |   |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---|
| 16. Graphic accents . . . . .                           | 7 |
| 17. Words in English with French accentuation . . . . . | 7 |

## CHAPTER II.—VOWEL SOUNDS. (§§ 18—41.)

| SECTION                                                      | PAGE |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 18. What is meant by a vowel sound . . . . .                 | 8    |
| 19, 20. Symbols employed to represent vowel sounds . . . . . | 8    |
| 21. Symbols grouped according to their sound . . . . .       | 9    |
| 22. Details of the value of each symbol . . . . .            | 10   |
| 23, 24. <i>a, â, ä</i> . . . . .                             | 10   |
| 25. <i>e mute</i> . . . . .                                  | 11   |
| 26. <i>eu, eû</i> . . . . .                                  | 11   |
| 27. <i>e</i> not mute, <i>é, è, ê</i> . . . . .              | 12   |
| 28. <i>ei, ai, aï</i> . . . . .                              | 12   |
| 29. <i>è, æ</i> . . . . .                                    | 12   |
| 30. <i>i, î</i> . . . . .                                    | 12   |
| 31. <i>y</i> . . . . .                                       | 13   |
| 32. <i>o</i> . . . . .                                       | 13   |
| 33. <i>ô</i> . . . . .                                       | 13   |
| 34. <i>au</i> . . . . .                                      | 13   |
| 35. <i>ou, où, oû</i> . . . . .                              | 13   |
| 36. <i>u, û</i> . . . . .                                    | 14   |
| 37. <i>an, am en, em,</i> . . . . .                          | 14   |
| 38. <i>in, im, ain, ein, aim</i> . . . . .                   | 14   |
| 39. <i>on, om</i> . . . . .                                  | 15   |
| 40. <i>un, um</i> . . . . .                                  | 15   |

## NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

|                                         |    |
|-----------------------------------------|----|
| 41. General rules on Quantity . . . . . | 15 |
|-----------------------------------------|----|

## CHAPTER III.—CONSONANT SOUNDS. (§§ 42—82.)

|                                                              |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 42. What is meant by a consonant sound . . . . .             | 16 |
| 43. Symbols employed to represent consonant sounds . . . . . | 16 |
| 44. Symbols grouped according to their sound . . . . .       | 16 |
| 45, 46. Classification of consonant sounds . . . . .         | 17 |
| 47. General rules on the consonants . . . . .                | 18 |
| 48. Hiatus . . . . .                                         | 19 |
| 49. Hiatus avoided by elision . . . . .                      | 19 |
| 50. Hiatus avoided by the use of a secondary form . . . . .  | 20 |
| 51. Hiatus avoided by sounding the final consonant . . . . . | 20 |
| 52-54. <i>k, g</i> . . . . .                                 | 21 |

| SECTION                                        | PAGE |
|------------------------------------------------|------|
| 55, 56. <i>ch, j</i> . . . . .                 | 12   |
| 57, 58. <i>t, d</i> . . . . .                  | 22   |
| 59, 60. <i>s, z</i> . . . . .                  | 23   |
| 61, 62. <i>p, b</i> . . . . .                  | 24   |
| 63, 64. <i>f, v</i> . . . . .                  | 24   |
| 65. <i>r</i> . . . . .                         | 25   |
| 66, 67. <i>l</i> . . . . .                     | 25   |
| 68. <i>m, n</i> . . . . .                      | 26   |
| 69. Superfluous symbol : <i>q</i> . . . . .    | 26   |
| 70-72. Superfluous symbol : <i>c</i> . . . . . | 26   |
| 73. Superfluous symbol : <i>x</i> . . . . .    | 26   |
| 74. Superfluous symbol : <i>w</i> . . . . .    | 27   |
| 75. Superfluous symbol : <i>th</i> . . . . .   | 27   |
| 76. Superfluous symbol : <i>rh</i> . . . . .   | 27   |
| 77. Superfluous symbol : <i>ph</i> . . . . .   | 27   |
| 78. Superfluous symbol : <i>h</i> . . . . .    | 27   |

## NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

|                                                       |    |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 79. <i>cinq, six, sept, huit, neuf, dix</i> . . . . . | 28 |
| 80. Mouillé consonants . . . . .                      | 28 |
| 81. Mouillé <i>l</i> . . . . .                        | 28 |
| 82. Modern pronunciation of Latin in France . . . . . | 28 |

## BOOK II.—ACCIDENCE. (§§ 83—242.)

## CHAPTER I.—SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

(§§ 83—144.)

|                                                              |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 83. Parts of Speech . . . . .                                | 29 |
| 84. The Substantive : Introductory Remarks . . . . .         | 30 |
| 85. The Adjective : Introductory Remarks . . . . .           | 30 |
| 86. The Articles . . . . .                                   | 31 |
| 87. Formation of Feminine in Adjectives . . . . .            | 32 |
| 88. Plural of ordinary Adjectives and Substantives . . . . . | 34 |
| 89. Plural of words taken substantively . . . . .            | 34 |
| 90. Plural of Proper names . . . . .                         | 35 |

| SECTION                                                                                 | PAGE |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 91. Plural of Foreign words . . . . .                                                   | 35   |
| 92. Plural of Compound Substantives and Adjectives . . . . .                            | 36   |
| 93. GENDER : what is meant by the term . . . . .                                        | 38   |
| 94, 95. Substantives signifying things WITH SEX . . . . .                               | 38   |
| 96. Substantives signifying things WITHOUT SEX . . . . .                                | 41   |
| 97. Rule of ' <i>e mute</i> ' . . . . .                                                 | 41   |
| 98. Nouns in which the meaning affords the best or only<br>clue to the Gender . . . . . | 42   |
| 99. Substantives with Double Gender . . . . .                                           | 42   |
| 100-111. FEMININE NOUNS NOT ENDING IN <i>e mute</i> :                                   |      |
| 101. Feminine Nouns ending in <i>-a</i> . . . . .                                       | 43   |
| 102. Feminine Nouns ending in <i>-é</i> . . . . .                                       | 43   |
| 103. Feminine Nouns ending in <i>-i</i> . . . . .                                       | 43   |
| 104. Feminine Nouns ending in <i>-f</i> . . . . .                                       | 43   |
| 105. Feminine Nouns ending in <i>-m</i> . . . . .                                       | 43   |
| 106. Feminine Nouns ending in <i>-n</i> . . . . .                                       | 44   |
| 107. Feminine Nouns ending in <i>-r</i> . . . . .                                       | 44   |
| 108. Feminine Nouns ending in <i>-s</i> . . . . .                                       | 45   |
| 109. Feminine Nouns ending in <i>-t</i> . . . . .                                       | 45   |
| 110. Feminine Nouns ending in <i>-u</i> . . . . .                                       | 45   |
| 111. Feminine Nouns ending in <i>-x</i> . . . . .                                       | 45   |
| 112-130. MASCULINE NOUNS ENDING IN <i>e mute</i> :                                      |      |
| 112. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-be</i> . . . . .                                     | 45   |
| 113. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-ce</i> . . . . .                                     | 46   |
| 114. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-de</i> . . . . .                                     | 46   |
| 115. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-ée</i> . . . . .                                     | 46   |
| 116. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-fe, -phe</i> . . . . .                               | 46   |
| 117. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-ge</i> . . . . .                                     | 47   |
| 118. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-he</i> . . . . .                                     | 47   |
| 119. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-ie</i> . . . . .                                     | 47   |
| 120. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-le</i> . . . . .                                     | 48   |
| 121. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-me</i> . . . . .                                     | 49   |
| 122. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-ne</i> . . . . .                                     | 49   |
| 123. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-pe</i> . . . . .                                     | 49   |
| 124. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-re</i> . . . . .                                     | 50   |
| 125. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-se</i> . . . . .                                     | 51   |
| 126. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-te</i> . . . . .                                     | 51   |
| 127. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-ue</i> . . . . .                                     | 52   |
| 128. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-ve</i> . . . . .                                     | 52   |
| 129. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-xe</i> . . . . .                                     | 52   |
| 130. Masculine Nouns ending in <i>-ze</i> . . . . .                                     | 52   |

| SECTION                                 | PAGE |
|-----------------------------------------|------|
| 131. Comparison of Adjectives . . . . . | 53   |
| 132. Cardinal Numerals . . . . .        | 53   |
| 133. Ordinal Numerals . . . . .         | 54   |
| 134. Collective Numerals . . . . .      | 54   |
| 135. Fractions . . . . .                | 54   |

NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

|                                                 |    |
|-------------------------------------------------|----|
| 136. Adjectives in <i>-eur</i> . . . . .        | 55 |
| 137. <i>Beau, bel</i> . . . . .                 | 55 |
| 138. <i>Grand' mère, grand' mères</i> . . . . . | 55 |
| 139. <i>S</i> as a mark of the plural . . . . . | 56 |
| 140. Some Irregular Plurals . . . . .           | 57 |
| 141. Class names of Human Beings . . . . .      | 58 |
| 141A. Class names of Animals . . . . .          | 58 |
| 142. Substantives of double gender . . . . .    | 58 |
| 142A. Gender of Compound Substantives . . . . . | 59 |
| 143. Gender of Proper Names . . . . .           | 59 |
| 144. Cardinals . . . . .                        | 59 |

CHAPTER II.—PRONOUNS. (§§ 144—172.)

|                                                          |    |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 145. PERSONAL PRONOUNS . . . . .                         | 60 |
| 146. Conjunctive Personal Pronouns (ordinary) . . . . .  | 60 |
| 147. Conjunctive Personal Pronouns (reflexive) . . . . . | 61 |
| 148. Disjunctive Personal Pronouns . . . . .             | 62 |
| 149. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .                       | 63 |
| 150. Adjective Possessive Pronouns . . . . .             | 63 |
| 151. Substantive Possessive Pronouns . . . . .           | 63 |
| 152. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .                    | 64 |
| 153. Adjective Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .          | 64 |
| 154. Substantive Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .        | 64 |
| 155. RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .       | 65 |
| 156. Adjective Relative Pronouns . . . . .               | 65 |
| 157. Substantive Relative Pronouns . . . . .             | 65 |
| 158. Adjective Interrogative Pronouns . . . . .          | 66 |
| 159. Substantive Interrogative Pronouns . . . . .        | 67 |
| 160. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS . . . . .                       | 68 |
| 161. Adjective Indefinite Pronouns . . . . .             | 68 |
| 162. Substantive Indefinite Pronouns . . . . .           | 68 |



## NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

| SECTION                                                       | PAGE |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 163. <i>Je, tu, moi, toi, etc.</i>                            | 69   |
| 164. <i>Mon, ton, son</i> , before a feminine Substantive     | 69   |
| 165. Why ' <i>leur</i> ' and not ' <i>leure</i> ' in feminine | 69   |
| 166. <i>Que</i> (what) and <i>quoi</i> (what) compared        | 70   |
| 167. <i>Autre, autrui</i>                                     | 70   |
| 168. <i>Chaque</i> and <i>chacun</i>                          | 70   |
| 169. <i>Quelque</i>                                           | 70   |
| 170. <i>Quelque, quel . . que, quelque, quelque . . que.</i>  | 71   |
| 171. <i>Quelconque</i>                                        | 71   |
| 172. <i>On</i> and <i>l'on</i>                                | 71   |

## CHAPTER III.—VERBS. (§§ 173—227.)

|                                                              |          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| 173. Introductory Remarks                                    | 72       |
| 174. Conjugation                                             | 73       |
| 175. 'Regular' and 'Irregular' Verbs                         | 73       |
| 176. Auxiliary Verbs                                         | 74       |
| 177. Tenses                                                  | 74       |
| 178-181. Formation of Tenses                                 | 76       |
| 182. English of the French Tenses                            | 79       |
| 183. Intransitive Verbs                                      | 80       |
| 184. Reflexive Verbs                                         | 81       |
| 185. Impersonal Verbs                                        | 82       |
| 186. Passive Voice                                           | 82       |
| 187. Paradigms : Observations on                             | 83       |
| 188. AVOIR                                                   | 84, 85   |
| 189. ETRE                                                    | 86, 87   |
| 190. Conjugation in -ER : PORTER                             | 88, 89   |
| 191. Conjugation in -IR : enlarged form, FINIR               | 90, 91   |
| 192. Conjugation in -IR : simple form, SENTIR                | 92, 93   |
| 193. Conjugation in -OIR : DEVOIR                            | 94, 95   |
| 194. Conjugation in -RE, model 1 : VENDRE                    | 96, 97   |
| 195. Conjugation in -RE, model 2 : PARAÎTRE                  | 98, 99   |
| 196. Conjugation in -RE, model 3 : PEINDRE                   | 100, 101 |
| 197. Conjugation in -RE, model 4 : CONDUIRE                  | 102, 103 |
| 198. Model of Reflexive Verb : SE LAVÉ                       | 104, 105 |
| 199. Model of Intransitive Verb with <i>être</i> : ARRIVER   | 106, 107 |
| 200. Irregular Verbs (so-called) : how classified            | 108      |
| 201. Variations of spelling connected with ' <i>hiatus</i> ' | 108      |

| SECTION                                                                                                                                                                                       | PAGE |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 202. Variations of spelling depending upon the changeable pronunciation of <i>c</i> and <i>g</i> . . . . .                                                                                    | 109  |
| 203. Variations of spelling connected with ' <i>e</i> mute ' . . . . .                                                                                                                        | 109  |
| 204. Verbs with variations, etc., which have their origin in Old French, etc.: how classified . . . . .                                                                                       | 110  |
| 205. <i>Rire, mettre, croire, moudre, résoudre, vivre, lire, taire, conclure, ouvrir, écrire, traire, naître, battre, coudre, vaincre, fuir, bouillir, assaillir, suivre, vêtir</i> . . . . . | 111  |
| 206. <i>Courir, voir, pourvoir, prévoir, envoyer, cueillir</i> . . . . .                                                                                                                      | 113  |
| 207. <i>Boire, prendre</i> . . . . .                                                                                                                                                          | 114  |
| 208. <i>Tenir, acquérir, mourir, mouvoir, recevoir, vouloir, valoir, falloir</i> . . . . .                                                                                                    | 115  |
| 209. <i>Pleuvoir, pouvoir, avoir, faire, dire, asseoir, savoir, être, aller</i> . . . . .                                                                                                     | 116  |
| 210. <i>Oùr, gésir, choir, échoir, déchoir, clore, éclore</i> . . . . .                                                                                                                       | 121  |

## NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

|                                                                             |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 211. Strong and Weak Verbs . . . . .                                        | 123 |
| 212. The four Latin and four French Conjugations . . . . .                  | 124 |
| 213. Future Indicative and Present Conditional . . . . .                    | 124 |
| 214. Tenses formed from the Latin . . . . .                                 | 125 |
| 215. -s final in 1st person singular . . . . .                              | 125 |
| 216. -t final in 3rd person singular . . . . .                              | 126 |
| 217. ' <i>Avoir</i> ' and ' <i>Être</i> ' with Intransitive Verbs . . . . . | 127 |
| 218-220. <i>Repartir</i> and <i>répartir, rire, mettre</i> . . . . .        | 128 |
| 221. Verbs in - <i>aitre</i> and - <i>ôtre</i> . . . . .                    | 129 |
| 222. Verbs in - <i>uire</i> . . . . .                                       | 130 |
| 223. <i>Peindre, plaindre, joindre, etc.</i> . . . .                        | 130 |
| 224. <i>Courir</i> . . . . .                                                | 131 |
| 225. Verbs in ' <i>OIR</i> ' . . . . .                                      | 131 |
| 226. <i>Envoyer</i> . . . . .                                               | 132 |
| 227. <i>Dire</i> . . . . .                                                  | 132 |

## CHAPTER IV.—ADVERBS. (§§ 228—235.)

|                                                    |     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 228. Adverbs of Time . . . . .                     | 133 |
| 229. Adverbs of Place . . . . .                    | 134 |
| 230. Adverbs of Number . . . . .                   | 134 |
| 231. Adverbs of Quality, Manner, etc. . . . .      | 135 |
| 232. Adverbs of Affirmation and Negation . . . . . | 135 |
| 233. Formation of Adverbs . . . . .                | 136 |
| 234. Comparison of Adverbs. . . . .                | 138 |

## NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

| SECTION                 | PAGE |
|-------------------------|------|
| 235. Negation . . . . . | 138  |

## CHAPTER V.—PREPOSITIONS. (§§ 236—238.)

|                                                                 |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 236. Prepositions governing the Accusative . . . . .            | 139 |
| 237. Prepositional expressions governing the Genitive . . . . . | 140 |
| 238. Formation of Prepositions . . . . .                        | 141 |

## CHAPTER VI.—CONJUNCTIONS. (§§ 239—241.)

|                                                         |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 239. Co-ordinate and Subordinate Conjunctions . . . . . | 142 |
| 240. List of Co-ordinate Conjunctions . . . . .         | 142 |
| 241. List of Subordinate Conjunctions . . . . .         | 142 |

## CHAPTER VII.—INTERJECTIONS.

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| 242. List of Interjections . . . . . | 144 |
|--------------------------------------|-----|

## BOOK III.—SYNTAX. (§§ 243—288.)

|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| 243. Introduction . . . . . | 145 |
|-----------------------------|-----|

## CHAPTER I.—AGREEMENT. (§§ 244—253.)

|                                                                           |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 244. FIRST CONCORD : The Verb and its Subject : general rule . . . . .    | 146 |
| 245. „ „ The Verb and its Subject : special rules . . . . .               | 146 |
| 246. SECOND CONCORD : The Adjective and its Noun : general rule . . . . . | 147 |
| 247. „ „ The Adjective and its Noun : special rules . . . . .             | 147 |
| 248. „ „ The Present Participle . . . . .                                 | 148 |
| 249. „ „ The Past Participle . . . . .                                    | 148 |
| 250. THIRD CONCORD : The Relative and its Antecedent . . . . .            | 150 |
| 251. FOURTH CONCORD : Apposition . . . . .                                | 150 |

## NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

| SECTION                                                   | PAGE |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 252. FIRST CONCORD : Composite Subject . . . . .          | 151  |
| 253.     "         "         Impersonal Subject . . . . . | 151  |

## CHAPTER II.—MOODS. (§§ 254—269.)

|                                                                                  |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 255. INFINITIVE Mood . . . . .                                                   | 153 |
| 256. Infinitive equivalent to a Noun . . . . .                                   | 153 |
| 257. Verbs requiring no Preposition before the following<br>Infinitive . . . . . | 154 |
| 258. Verbs requiring ' <i>de</i> ' before Infinitive . . . . .                   | 154 |
| 259. Verbs requiring ' <i>à</i> ' before Infinitive . . . . .                    | 156 |
| 260. Verbs requiring ' <i>à</i> ' or ' <i>de</i> ' before Infinitive . . . . .   | 158 |
| 261, 262. INDICATIVE and CONDITIONAL Moods . . . . .                             | 159 |
| 263-266. SUBJUNCTIVE Mood in Subordinate sentences . . . . .                     | 160 |
| 267. Addition of ' <i>ne</i> ' in Subordinate sentence . . . . .                 | 160 |
| 268. Subjunctive in Principal sentence . . . . .                                 | 162 |
| 269. IMPERATIVE . . . . .                                                        | 163 |

## CHAPTER III.—TENSES. (§§ 270—279.)

## PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| 270. Simple Present . . . . .    | 166 |
| 271. Imperfect Present . . . . . | 166 |
| 272. Perfect Present . . . . .   | 167 |
| 273. Simple Past . . . . .       | 167 |
| 274. Imperfect Past . . . . .    | 168 |
| 275. Perfect Past . . . . .      | 170 |
| 276. Simple Future . . . . .     | 171 |
| 277. Imperfect Future . . . . .  | 171 |
| 278. Perfect Future . . . . .    | 171 |

## SUBORDINATE SENTENCE.

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| 279. Sequence of Tenses . . . . . | 172 |
|-----------------------------------|-----|

## CHAPTER IV.—ARTICLES. (§§ 280—282.)

|                                                                |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 280. Substantives employed in a general sense . . . . .        | 173 |
| 281. Substantives employed in an indeterminate sense . . . . . | 176 |
| 282. Substantives employed in a determinate sense . . . . .    | 148 |

## CHAPTER V.—PRONOUNS. (§§ 283, 284.)

| SECTION                                                                       | PAGE |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 283. Some uses of the Conjunctive and Disjunctive Personal Pronouns . . . . . | 177  |
| 284. Some uses of <i>celui</i> , etc. . . . .                                 | 178  |

# A SMALLER FRENCH GRAMMAR.

## INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. Philologists have divided the languages of the world into different families:—the Turanian family, the Semitic family, the Aryan family.

They have separated the Aryan family into two great divisions:—the Southern or Asiatic, the Northern or European.

They have further separated the Northern or European division into various groups, of which the following are the chief:—the Slavonic, the Hellenic or Grecian, the Teutonic, the Celtic, the Italic or Romanic.

§ 2. The only important language of the Italic group is Latin. From popular Latin, with a greater or less admixture of words from different sources, sprang a number of languages, of which the following are the chief:—

Spanish and Portuguese.

Italian.

Langue d'Oc, or Provençal.

Langue d'Oïl, or Old French.

The Langue d'Oïl, or Old French, had four principal dialects:

The Normandy dialect.

The Picardy dialect.

The Burgundy dialect.

The dialect of the Isle of France.

From the dialect of the Isle of France, with a greater or less number of forms from the other dialects, and at various times words from other languages, has arisen **Modern French**

## NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

§ 3. Before the Romans came into Gaul, Celtic was spoken there as in England. The Romans first settled in Gaul about B.C. 100, but it was not till the invasion of Cæsar (B.C. 58) that Latin penetrated beyond the Roman *Provincia*. It does not seem to have been the general language of the country till about the fifth century. Of course it had by that time changed greatly, and was known as *Romana rustica*, or peasant Latin. From the 5th to the 10th century the Germans came in large numbers into France, but they did not establish their language there as they did in England. They learned the *Romana rustica*, and joined to it a number of their own words. The language went on changing till the 12th and 13th centuries, when it may be said for a time to have stood still. The language as we then find it is called *Langue d'Oïl*, or *Old French*. Like Latin, it depended much upon inflexions and less upon the position of words. It was "*synthetic*" (as it is called), though less so than Latin. Then came a time of confusion, which lasted during the 14th, 15th, and 16th centuries. The language spoken during the beginning of that time was like *Old French*; during the later part it resembled *Modern French*. The best name for it is *Middle French*. In the 17th century were born Corneille, Racine, Molière, Pascal, Bossuet, and many other famous authors. They wrote a language which scarcely differs from the French of the present time. Some words and phrases have become old-fashioned, and are no longer used; but the language is really the same. Inflexions are of less importance, and almost everything depends on position. The language is, "*analytic*."

§ 4. Not many Celtic words remain in Modern French. The number of German words is much greater; they relate generally to war, feudalism, etc. During the 16th century a great many Latin\* words were introduced from books. These we speak of as *learned* words to distinguish them from the *popular* Latin words of which French is mostly composed. Also in the 16th century many Italian words were forced into French. Then a number of Spanish words. During the present century a great deal of English has been gradually establishing itself. The number of words from other languages is not very great; still there are some from India, China, etc. See *Student's French Grammar*, pp. 15—25 for lists.

---

\* And some Greek.

## BOOK I.—PHONOLOGY.

### CHAPTER I.—ALPHABET, SYLLABLES, ACCENT, ETC.

#### THE ALPHABET.

§ 5. **Names of the Letters:** (1) The letters, which are used to represent the various sounds employed in speaking any language, form its alphabet.

The French alphabet is the same as the English.

It is important not to confuse the names of the letters with their sounds; the sounds given to the letters often vary, the names do not.

(2) The names of the vowels in French are:—

a (*fâchez*), e (*été*), i (*ici*), o (*écho*), u (*tu*).

(3) There are two ways of naming the consonants in French. The following is the ordinary way:—

bé, cé, dé, effe, gé, ache, ji, ka, elle, emme, enne, pé, ku, erre, esse, té, vé, ics, zède.

w is called 'double vé,' and y 'i grec.'

The following is the better way. The names then correspond as much as possible to the sounds:—

be, de, fe, ghe, he, je, ke, le, me, ne, que (ke), re, se, te, ve, xe (kse) ze.

c may be called se or ke; w may be called ou or ve.

§ 6. **Imperfections of the French Alphabet.**—For an alphabet to be perfect, every separate sound should have a separate symbol. The French alphabet, like the English, is imperfect:

(1) There are at least thirty-two sounds, and only twenty six letters to represent them.

(2) The same letter may represent more than one sound: the o in *mode* has a different sound from the o in *rose*; the g in *manger* has a different sound from the g in *gant*.

(3) The same sound may have more than one letter to



represent it: the sound of *k* can be represented by *k*, *c*, and *q*.

(4) Many letters are silent: *gt* in *doigt*; *r* in *aimer*; *i* in *poigne*, etc.

(5) Two letters may represent but one sound: *eu* in *jeune*; *ch* in *chercher*; *an* in *tant*, etc.

(6) One letter may represent two sounds: *x* in *exerciser*.

(7) The letters *n*, *m* sometimes help to represent vowel sounds, sometimes they are consonants; compare *bon* and *bonne*.

### SYLLABLES.

§ 7. **Division of Words into Syllables.**—(1) A syllable must contain a vowel. It may or may not also have one or more consonants.

(2) Every inner syllable must begin with a consonant: \* *ci-du-ca-tion*.

(8) Consonants coming together between two vowels must be divided: *sol-dat*.

Exceptions to (8).

i. Combinations of consonants, like *cr*, *dr*, *fr*, *fl*, *sl*, etc., in which *r* or *l* appears as second letter, must be left undivided: *ci-dre*, *ap-pi-que*.

ii. *ph*, *th*, *rh*, *ch*, † represent simple sounds. They must remain undivided: *flè-che*.

iii. *gn* usually = *ni*. The letters are undivided: *o-gnon*.

§ 8. **Closed and Open Syllables.**—A syllable followed immediately by a consonant sound is said to be *closed*, ‡ or *stopped*: *est-il*; *toute*. A syllable not immediately followed by a consonant sound is said to be *open*, ‡ or *full*: *tout*; *il est*.

§ 9. **Long and Short Syllables.** (See § 41, *Quantity*.)

\* This is not always true in verse.

† *ph*=*f*; *th*=*t*; *rh*=*r*; *ch*=sometimes English *sh*, sometimes *k* (see § 55).

‡ Do not confuse this with the French terms *fermé* and *ouvert* which are often applied to *sounds*.

## GRAPHIC ACCENTS.

§ 10. There are three graphic or written Accents in French:—

1. The Circumflex  $\hat{\text{A}}$
2. The Grave  $\backslash$
3. The Acute  $/$

§ 11. The CIRCUMFLEX accent is found over all the vowels.

(1) It usually shows that some letter (especially *s*) is no longer employed in spelling the word, thus:—

|                                                    |   |   |                           |
|----------------------------------------------------|---|---|---------------------------|
| <i>âge</i> is now written instead of <i>aage</i> , |   |   |                           |
| <i>sûr</i>                                         | „ | „ | <i>seur</i> ,             |
| <i>tête</i>                                        | „ | „ | <i>teste</i> ,            |
| <i>maître</i>                                      | „ | „ | <i>maistre</i> ,          |
| <i>côte</i>                                        | „ | „ | <i>coste</i> , etc., etc. |

(2) Some of these vowels, with circumflex accent, have a different sound from the same vowels without the accent, thus:—*a* is usually different from *â*; *o* from *ô*; *ê* from *é*.

§ 12. The GRAVE accent is placed over a vowel in a few words to distinguish them from others similarly spelt:—

|                  |                         |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>ou</i> , or;  | <i>où</i> , where;      |
| <i>la</i> , the; | <i>là</i> , there; etc. |

But its chief use is over *e*, to strengthen the tonic syllable

*lever*,                      *je lève*.

§ 13. The ACUTE accent is only found over *e*. It may have the same meaning as the circumflex or the grave, but its chief use is to show that the *e* is not to have the sound of *e* in *je*, but that of *e* in *thé* (§ 27): compare—

*général* and *recevoir*.  
*régal*        „ *regard*, etc., etc.

### TONIC OR FORCE ACCENT.

§ 14. **Tonic or Force Accent in a Word.**—1. The syllable in a word which is pronounced with the greatest force is said to bear the force or **tonic accent**.

2. The word *accent* in this sense must not be confused with its more frequent use with reference to the signs ' ^ . These signs rarely in French point out the syllable upon which the tonic accent is to be laid.

3. In English the tonic or force accent may be laid upon—

- (a) the last syllable : *briga·de*.
- (b) the last syllable but one : *va·pour*.
- (c) the last syllable but two : *pa·storal*.
- (d) the last syllable but three : *iné·vitable*.

But the tendency is to put the accent as near the beginning of the word as possible.

4. In French, on the contrary, the tonic accent is always laid upon the last syllable if the word does not end in *e mute*, and upon the last but one if it does end in *e mute*. Except in verse this is the last pronounced syllable : *briga·de*, *vapeu·r*, *pastora·l*, *iné·vita·ble*.

5. The syllable upon which the accent is laid is said to be the *tonic* or *accented* syllable. Those syllables upon which no accent is laid are said to be *atonic* or *unaccented* syllables.

6. The tonic accent in French is at all times much weaker than in English. Or, what practically is the same thing, the unaccented syllables in French are more distinctly pronounced than in English, so that the contrast is not so great between unaccented and accented syllables. Compare *cascade* (Eng.) and *cascade* (Fr.), *esteem* and *estime*, *fatigue* (Eng.) and *fatigue* (Fr.), etc., etc.

The principle may be safely laid down, that the less difference a speaker makes between accented and unaccented syllables, the better is his pronunciation. This, of course is not true of English, where unaccented syllables are often scarcely heard.

When, as in *économie, vagabond, Normandie, éducation, comfortable*, etc., the French word is the same or nearly the same as the corresponding English one, there is a *danger* (§ 17) of wrongly accenting in French the syllable that is accented in English. This must be carefully guarded against, as it is doubtless one of the principal causes of what is known as the "English accent" in the pronunciation of French.

§ 15. **Tonic or Force Accent in a Phrase.**—At the end of every phrase in French, there is a tonic or force accent over and above that found at the end of each word. To this accent the term **phrase-accent** may be conveniently applied. It is stronger than the ordinary word-accent. In fact, in the mouth of many speakers it is the only accent that is heard. The word-accent, already weak, is made still weaker.

---

## NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS TO CHAPTER I.

§ 16. **Graphic Accents.**—i. The Graphic Accents were adopted from the Greek, but they have not in French the same meaning as in Greek.

ii. They were introduced in the sixteenth century, to help learners to pronounce correctly, and were at first only employed for that purpose in elementary works.

iii. Till the present century they were employed with little or no regularity. Authors seem to have allowed the printers to put them or to omit them as they liked.

§ 17. **English Words with Accent on last Syllable.**—Many English words derived from French keep the French accent, especially—

(1) Nouns, in *-ade, -ier eer, -ee or -ine -in*, as *cascade'*, *crusade'*, etc.; *cavalier'*, *chandelier'*, etc.; *gazetteer'*, *pioneer'*, etc. *legatee'*, *payee'*, etc.; *balloon'*, *cartoon'*, etc.; *chagrin*, *violin'*, etc.; *routine'*, *marine'*, etc.

*Cadet'*, *brunette'*, *gazette'*, *cravat'*, *canal'*, *control'*, *gazelle'*, *amateur'*, *fatigue'*, *anti'que*, *poli'ce*, etc.

## CHAPTER II.—VOWEL SOUNDS.

§ 18. The vowel sounds are formed by the voice, modified, but not interrupted, by the various positions of the tongue and lips : examples—

|           |    |                |
|-----------|----|----------------|
| <i>i</i>  | in | <i>Paris.</i>  |
| <i>â</i>  | „  | <i>fâchez.</i> |
| <i>ou</i> | „  | <i>doux.</i>   |

The union in one syllable of any two vowel sounds forms a double vowel sound or diphthong : *ui* in *lui* ; *oui* in *Louis* ; *ouan* in *louange*.

## SYMBOLS EMPLOYED TO REPRESENT VOWEL SOUNDS.

§ 19. There are more vowel sounds than there are distinct letters to represent them. Various expedients are employed to remedy in part this defect in the alphabet :—

1. Accents are employed.
2. Two of the letters *a, e, i, o, u*, are employed in combination.

3. *N* and *m* are employed in combination with *a, e, i, o, u*.

§ 20. There are in French about fifteen vowel sounds.\*

1. Nine of these vowel sounds can be represented by the simple letters *a, e, i, o, u*, sometimes with, sometimes without graphic accents.

|             |       |                 |
|-------------|-------|-----------------|
| 1. <i>a</i> | as in | <i>fatigue.</i> |
| 2. <i>â</i> | „     | <i>fâchez.</i>  |
| 3. <i>e</i> | „     | <i>je.</i>      |
| 4. <i>ê</i> | „     | <i>thê.</i>     |
| 5. <i>i</i> | „     | <i>Paris.</i>   |
| 6. <i>o</i> | „     | <i>modéré.</i>  |
| 7. <i>ô</i> | „     | <i>mortier.</i> |
| 8. <i>o</i> | „     | <i>côté.</i>    |
| 9. <i>u</i> | „     | <i>du.</i>      |

---

\* This number might be increased, but fifteen are enough for ordinary accuracy.

Several of these can be also represented by two of these letters combined, thus :

*au* in *maure* = *o* in *mort*.

*au* „ *faut* = *o* „ *sot*.

*ai* „ *j'ai* = *é* „ *thé*.

2. Two can only be represented by combinations of the simple letters.

10. *eu* as in *jeu*.

11. *ou* „ *doux*.

3. Four can only be represented by combinations of the simple vowels with *n* or *m*.

12. *un* as in *fantaisie*.

13. *in* „ *fin*.

14. *on* „ *mon*.

15. *un* „ *jeun*.

The last four are called nasal \* vowels, the remainder oral vowels.

## SYMBOLS GROUPED ACCORDING TO THEIR SOUNDS.

§ 21. The three principal vowel sounds are *i*, *â*, *ou*. The others are mere modifications of these three. For purposes of comparison they are better arranged in groups. The vowel sounds in each of these groups are closely related.

- |    |           |       |          |                    |
|----|-----------|-------|----------|--------------------|
| 1. | <i>i</i>  | as in | key-word | <i>Paris</i> .     |
| 2. | <i>e</i>  | „     | „        | <i>thé</i> .       |
| 3. | <i>a</i>  | „     | „        | <i>fatigue</i> .   |
| 4. | <i>in</i> | „     | „        | <i>fin</i> .       |
| 5. | <i>a</i>  | „     | „        | <i>fâchez</i> .    |
| 6. | <i>an</i> | „     | „        | <i>fantaisie</i> . |
| 7. | <i>o</i>  | „     | „        | <i>modéré</i> .    |
| 8. | <i>o</i>  | „     | „        | <i>mortier</i> .   |
| 9. | <i>on</i> | „     | „        | <i>mon</i> .       |

---

\* This name is misleading : the sound does not come through the nose.

|     |               |                |              |
|-----|---------------|----------------|--------------|
| 10. | <i>o</i>      | as in key-word | <i>côté.</i> |
| {   | 11. <i>eu</i> | „ „            | <i>jeu.</i>  |
|     | 12. <i>e</i>  | „ „            | <i>je.</i>   |
|     | 13. <i>un</i> | „ „            | <i>jeun.</i> |
| {   | 14. <i>ou</i> | „ „            | <i>doux.</i> |
|     | 15. <i>u</i>  | „ „            | <i>du.</i>   |

No English key-words are given: almost all the French vowel sounds differ essentially from the English ones, and can be learnt by the ear only.

A careful study of the key-words given is absolutely necessary. The vowel sounds should also be separated from their accompanying consonants, and *studied alone*.

### DETAILS OF THE VALUE OF EACH SYMBOL.

§ 22. Unfortunately it is very inconvenient, from the different values given to the symbols, to make the grouping given above, the basis of the necessary details. No way seems possible, except an alphabetical arrangement according to the symbols. This is done for the most part.

Vowels are ‘*long*’, ‘*common*,’ and ‘*short*,’ in French as in other languages, but the question of “*quantity*” \* is not introduced here except in one or two instances, for it is of comparatively small importance. A “*common*” length will seldom be wrong. In all the key-words the vowel has this ‘*common*’ length,

*a, à.*

§ 23. *a, d* are generally sounded as in key-word *fatigue*.

But—

1. *a* when tonic, and closed by *r*, has somewhat the sound of *a* in *fâchez*.† Example: *gare, gendarme*.

2. *a* is silent in *août* (August), but not in *aouté* (ripened), its derivative.

\* For *Quantity*, see § 41.

† Or open and tonic: *chat*. But care must be taken not to make the sound quite like the *d* in *fâchez*. Englishmen are too apt to make this mistake.

## â.

§ 24. *â* is usually pronounced as in key-word *fâchez*.

But it has the sound of *a* (*fatigue*), in the Past Simple Indicative and Subjunctive :—

nous *désirâmes* qu'il parlât.

## e mute.

§ 25. Every unaccented *e* that ends a syllable is called an *e mute*, because it is, if possible, glided over, or even totally omitted : *village, demain, petit, cela*.

RULES UPON 'E MUTE.'—1. When two or more syllables, each of which ends in '*e mute*,' occur in immediate succession, it is only possible to glide over one *e* out of every two. It is usual to begin by pronouncing the first *e*: as, *recevoir*, pronounced *rec'voir*; *je ne le vois pas*, pronounced *je n' le vois pas*. Occasionally the sentence is made to run more smoothly by gliding over the first: *tu ne le vois pas*, pronounced *tu n' le vois pas*.

2. '*E mute*' must be sounded between two onants, which have the same, or nearly the same sound: *Ce sont les plus riches de tous ses parents*.

3. '*E mute*' is always sounded before an '*aspirated h*,' as *le haricot*; also before *oui*, *onze*, and *un*, one, used substantively: *le oui, le onze*.

4. '*E mute*' is sounded in the pronoun *le*, after verbs in the imperative mood: *faites-le pour moi*.

## eu, êû.

§ 26. *eu, êû*, are generally sounded as in key-word *jeu*.

But *eu, êû* have the sound of *u*—

(1) Throughout the verb *avoir*: *il eut, il eût*.

(2) In all words having the ending *geure*: *gagure*.

CAUTION.—Care must be taken not to confuse the sound of *eu pure* with that of *e mute*.



**e not mute, é, è, ê.**

§ 27. 1. *e* unaccented, followed by a consonant in the SAME syllable (see § 7), is pronounced as if it were accented: *res-pec-ter*.

2. *e*, with any of the accents, or unaccented, but followed by a consonant in the same syllable, has the long sound of *e* in *thème*, when the syllable is closed and tonic, § 41, and only then: ex., *répète*, *collège*, *tête*, *certes*, *chef*, *sel*, *avec*, *amer*, etc., etc. Elsewhere the sound is short, or at most common.

**ei, ai, ai.**

§ 28. *ei*, *ai*, *ai*, are usually sounded as *e* in key-word *thé*.

But—

(1) *ai* and *ei*, with or without accent, when they occur in a closed tonic syllable (and only then), are sounded as *e* in *thème* (§ 41).

(2) Throughout the verb *faire*, in all atonic syllables, *ai* has the value of *e* in *je*: *faisais*, *faisant*, etc.\*

(3) *ai* followed by *l mouillé*, is a diphthong and = *a+i*, examples, *aille*, *faillir*.

**ë.**

§ 29. *ë* equals *è* in *poème*, *poète*, etc.; such words are now more commonly spelt *poëme*, *poëte*, etc.

**œ.**

1. *œ* equals *é* in key-word *thé*: *Œtna*.

2. In *œil*, and compounds, *œ* is sounded as *eu* in *jeu*.

**i, î.**

§ 30. *i*, *î* are usually sounded as in key-word *Paris*.

But—

(1) In the diphthong *oi*,\* the vowel *i* = *a*: *roi*.

(2) It is silent in *oignon*,† *poigne*, *poignet*, *poignée*, *poignard*, etc.

\* In *oi* it has its usual sound: *héroïsme*.

† Also spelt *ognon*.

## Y.

§ 31. *y* usually equals *i* in key-word *Paris*.

But—

(1) Between two vowels it equals double *i*: thus, *ayant* = *ai-lant*; *appuyer* = *appui-ier*.

(2) In *pays* and derivatives it also equals double *i*: *pays* = *pai-is*; *paysan* = *pai-isan*, etc.

## O.

§ 32. *o* is usually sounded as in key-word *modéré*.

But—

1. It has the sound of *ô* in *côté*:

(a) when open and tonic: *écho*, *matelot*.

(b) when closed by the sound of *z*: *chose*.

(c) in the derivatives of *gros* (big); as *grossier* (coarse).

2. It has the sound heard in key-word *mortier*, only when closed by *r*.

3. It is silent in *bœuf*, *sœur*, *nœud*, *œil*, \**Ætna*, *Ædipe*, etc.

4. It has the sound of *ou* in diphthong *oi*: *roi*.

## ô.

§ 33. *ô* is usually sounded as in key-word *côté*.

But in *hôpital*, *ô* equals *o* in *modéré*.

## au.

§ 34. *au* is usually sounded as *ô* in key-word *côté*.

But when closed by *r*, it is pronounced like *o* in *mortier*:

ex. *maure*, *aurai*.

## ou, où, ôû.

§ 35. *ou*, *où*, *ôû*, are always sounded as in key-word *doux*.

---

\* *Œil*, *œillet* = *cuille*, *cuillet*.

u, û.

§ 36. *u, û*, are usually sounded as in key-word *du*.

But—

1. When in the syllable *qua* the *u* is sounded, it has the value of *ou* in *doux*: *équateur, aquatique*.

2. *u* is silent:

(1) In the syllables *gue, gui*: *figue, guérir, guimauve*.

(2) Usually when preceded by *q*: *quatre, quiconque*.

an, am, en, em.

§ 37. All these symbols usually represent the vowel sound heard in key-word *fantaisie*.

But—

1. They lose their simple vowel value when followed either by a vowel \* or by another *n* or *m*; then—

*an* = *a* + *n'*: *anecdote: année*.

*am* = *a* + *m'*: *madame: flamme*.

*en* = *ě* + *n'*: *il mène: ancienne*.

*em* = *ě* + *m'*: *crème: dilemme*.

2. *en* in diphthong *ien, yen* = *in*, thus *chien* = *chi-in*.

3. *en* is silent in third person plural of every tense of every verb: *chantent* = *chante*; *aimèrent* = *aimère*; the *e* is an *e* mute.

in, im, ain, ein, aim.

§ 38. All these symbols usually represent the vowel sound heard in key-word *fin*.

But—

1. They lose their simple vowel value when followed either by a vowel \* or by another *n* or *m*: then—

*in* = *i* + *n'*: *inné*.

*im* = *i* + *m'*: *imaginer, immense*.

*ain* = *ai* + *n'*: *ainé*.

*aim* = *ai* + *m'*: *aimer*.

*ein* = *i* + *n*: *pleine*.

---

\* See also *Hiatus* (§ 51).

## on, om.

§ 39. Both these symbols usually represent the vowel sound heard in key-word *mon*.

But—

1. They lose their simple vowel value when followed either by a vowel\* or by another *n* or *m*: then—

*on* = *o* + *n'*:      *prononcer, raisonner.*

*om* = *o* + *m'*:      *omission, homme.*

2. *on* in *monsieur* = *eu* in *jeu*.

3. *o* is dropped in *faon, paon, taon*. The pronunciation is *fan, pan, tan*.

## un, um.

§ 40. Both these symbols usually represent the vowel sound heard in key-word *jeun*.

But—

They lose their simple vowel value when followed either by a vowel\* or by another *n* or *m*: then—

*un* = *u* + *n'*:      *brune.*

*um* = *u* + *m'*:      *brume.*

## NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS TO CHAPTER II.

§ 41. **General Rules on Quantity.**—Most vowels have not only one *long* sound and one *short* sound, but at least one intermediate sound which may be called *common*, *medial*, or *doubtful*.

Length in French depends mainly upon accent. Roughly speaking, tonic syllables are long, atonic syllables are short.

But accent in French is weak, and the extra length of the accented syllable will at all times be small. Much depends upon the vowel itself, and the nature of the consonants which follow.

The following rules are sufficiently accurate for ordinary purposes:—

1. In an open atonic syllable the vowel is short: *fouet*.
2. In a closed atonic syllable the vowel is common: *foulard*.
3. In an open tonic syllable the vowel is common: *fou*.
4. In a closed tonic syllable the vowel is long: *foule*.

\* See also *Hiatus* (§ 51).

## CHAPTER III.—CONSONANT SOUNDS.

§ 42. A vowel sound has been explained to be a sound formed by the voice, modified, but *not interrupted*, by the various positions of the tongue and lips. When the sound is *interrupted*, a consonant sound is produced.

SYMBOLS EMPLOYED TO REPRESENT  
CONSONANT SOUNDS.

§ 43. It was shown in § 19 that there are more vowel sounds than there are letters to represent them. The reverse is true of the consonant sounds; there are more letters than there are sounds. The following letters are superfluous:

1. q, which is sounded as k.
2. c, which is sometimes sounded as k, sometimes as s.
3. x, which is a double letter, and is sounded sometimes as ks, sometimes as gz.
4. h, which is not sounded at all.
5. w, which is sounded as ou, and is then a vowel, or as v, and is then a consonant.

## SYMBOLS GROUPED ACCORDING TO THEIR SOUNDS.

§ 44. There are in French sixteen consonant sounds. Of these, fifteen can be represented by simple letters:

- |     |   |                |                |
|-----|---|----------------|----------------|
| 1.  | b | as in key-word | <i>bedeau.</i> |
| 2.  | d | „ „            | <i>dard.</i>   |
| 3.  | f | „ „            | <i>fera.</i>   |
| 4.  | g | „ „            | <i>gant.</i>   |
| 5.  | j | „ „            | <i>jeter.</i>  |
| 6.  | k | „ „            | <i>kan.</i>    |
| 7.  | l | „ „            | <i>lever.</i>  |
| 8.  | m | „ „            | <i>homme.</i>  |
| 9.  | n | „ „            | <i>bonne.</i>  |
| 10. | p | „ „            | <i>petit.</i>  |
| 11. | r | „ „            | <i>revoir.</i> |
| 12. | s | „ „            | <i>sel.</i>    |
| 13. | t | „ „            | <i>tard.</i>   |
| 14. | v | „ „            | <i>verra.</i>  |
| 15. | z | „ „            | <i>zèle.</i>   |

Several of these can also be represented by two of these letters combined; thus,

ph in *phrase* = f in *fera*.  
 rh in *rhum* = r in *revoir*.  
 th in *thé* = t in *tard*.

One of the consonant sounds can only be represented by two letters :

16. ch as in key-word *chou*.

§ 45. These consonant sounds are variously classified :

1. They are said to be *momentary* if they cannot be prolonged. This the term *mute* implies.

k, g, t, d, p, b, are mutes.

2. They are said to be *continuous* if they can be prolonged. The continuous are divided into—

SPIRANTS : ch, j, s, z, f, v

TRILLS : l, r.

NASALS : n, m.

3. The mutes and spirants demand a further important division; namely, that into *hard* or sharp, *soft* or flat. They run in couples, and often interchange.

|         | HARD. |    |               |      | SOFT. |    |               |
|---------|-------|----|---------------|------|-------|----|---------------|
| Compare | k     | in | <i>kan</i>    | with | g     | in | <i>gant</i>   |
| „       | ch    | „  | <i>chemin</i> | „    | j     | „  | <i>jeter</i>  |
| „       | t     | „  | <i>tard</i>   | „    | d     | „  | <i>dard</i>   |
| „       | s     | „  | <i>sel</i>    | „    | z     | „  | <i>zèle</i>   |
| „       | p     | „  | <i>petit</i>  | „    | b     | „  | <i>bedeau</i> |
| „       | f     | „  | <i>fera</i>   | „    | v     | „  | <i>verra</i>  |

4. The consonant sounds are otherwise classified according to the organ by which they are mainly sounded.

GUTTURALS, or throat letters : k, g, ch, j.

DENTALS, or teeth letters : t, d, s, z, n, l, r.

LABIALS, or lip letters : p, b, f, v, m.

## § 46. SCHEME OF THE CONSONANTS.

|             | MOMENTARY |       | CONTINUOUS. |       |         |         |
|-------------|-----------|-------|-------------|-------|---------|---------|
|             | MUTES.    |       | SPIRANTS.   |       | TRILLS. | NASALS. |
|             | HARD.     | SOFT. | HARD.       | SOFT. |         |         |
| GUTTURALS . | k         | g     | ch          | j     |         |         |
| DENTALS .   | t         | d     | s           | z     | r l     | n       |
| LABIALS .   | p         | b     | f           | v     |         | m       |

In this table are omitted q, c, x, h, w. (See § 48.)

## GENERAL RULES ON THE CONSONANTS.

§ 47. In modern French, all initial and medial consonants are sounded. The final consonant alone is silent.\* Exceptions :—

1. *c*, (*k*, *q*), *f*, *l*, *r*, final, are more often sounded than not: as, *le duc*, *le canif*, *le sel*, *le jour*.

2. *S* final does not in any way influence the pronunciation of the consonant which precedes it; † that consonant is still treated as final: *abricot*, *abricots*, *mur*, *murs*, etc.

8. Where the next word begins with a vowel or silent *h*, the final consonant, which under ordinary circumstances would be silent, is often sounded to prevent *hiatus*; *il est ici*.

But this subject requires special treatment; for hiatus (1) is often preferred, (2) is often only apparent, and mistakes are easily made.

---

\* The first letter of a word is said to be '*initial*;' the last is '*final*;' the others are '*medial*.' A '*medial*' consonant often means a consonant in the body of a word, and *between two vowels*. '*Medial*' has no such meaning here.

† Nor, except in *des*, *les*, *mes*, *ces*, *tes*, *ses*, *tu es*, that of the vowels.

## HIATUS.

§ 48. Any attempt at pronouncing two vowel-sounds rapidly and distinctly, is attended with a kind of hesitation known by the name of "*hiatus*."

Such hiatus may occur within a word; but the term is generally applied to the case in which one vowel ends a word, and the second begins one. It is only to the latter hiatus that the following observations and rules apply:

1. Hiatus is generally unpleasant, and is avoided.
2. Sometimes it is pleasant rather than otherwise, and no attempt is made to avoid it. Compare *s'il vient* and *si elle vient*.
3. Even when really unpleasant, it is not always possible to avoid it without injury to the sense: *elle est allé à Athènes*.
4. Hiatus is preferable to harshness, or to a repetition of the same consonant sound; thus *et on le lira* is better than *et l'on le lira*.
5. Hiatus is avoided:—(a) By elision. (b) By the use of a secondary form. (c) By sounding the final consonant of a word.

§ 49. **Hiatus avoided by elision.**—Elision is only resorted to with three of the vowels; viz., *a*, *i*, and *e* mute. The other vowels are never cut off. The hiatus with them is maintained.

*J'aurais aimé à lui parler. Tu as entendu.*

*L'écho est bien distinct. Où allez-vous?*

1. *a* is cut off in the article and in the pronoun *la* only: *l'épée* for *la épée*, *il l'avait* for *il la avait*.

Elsewhere the hiatus remains, *il a acheté*; or is destroyed by other means: *vas-y* for *va-y*.

2. *i* is cut off in *si il* only: *s'il vient aujourd'hui*. Elsewhere the hiatus remains: *si elle vient*.

3. *e* mute is rarely maintained: *l'oiseau* for *le oiseau*. Even when preserved, the sound of *e* is totally destroyed: ex. *un père illustre*, pronounced *un pèr' illustre*.\*

---

\* Unless we except the case mentioned in § 25. 4.



§ 50. **Hiatus avoided by use of a secondary form.**—This expedient for avoiding the hiatus is only resorted to in a few isolated cases which are given and explained in the accidence :

- (1) The older forms, *nouvel, fol, mol, bel, vieil*, are employed instead of *nouveau, fou, mou, beau, vieux*.
- (2) *mon, ton, son*, are employed instead of *ma, ta, sa*.
- (3) *cet* is employed instead of *ce*.
- (4) *l'on* is employed instead of *on*.
- (5) *aime-t-il*, etc., is employed instead of *aime il*, etc.
- (6) *donnes-en, penses-y, vas-y*, etc., are employed instead of *donne-en, pense-y, va-y*, etc.

§ 51. **Hiatus avoided by sounding the final consonant (liaison).**—When the final consonant is sounded before the vowel, the words practically become one. This is spoken of as '*liaison*' (Lat. *ligationem*, a binding). But often the hiatus is only one in appearance.

1. There is no real hiatus, or at the most a very weak one, when the sense does not require the two vowel sounds to be rapidly pronounced one after the other, but allows of a pause between them :—

L'homme sortait | en chantant.

Bientôt | ils leur défendront de venir.

Le soldat | ambitieux | a gagné la victoire.

J'aperçois | Hélène.

Mon moulin | est à moi.

In each of the above, and in all similar cases, the consonant must not be sounded before the vowel: the hiatus is only apparent.

2. The converse is to a great extent true; when the pause is not possible, the consonant is sounded. Hence the following rules :—

(a) In poetry the final consonant is almost always pronounced before a vowel sound, for the rules of verse require hiatus to be avoided. (See PROSODY, *Hiatus*).

(β) In serious prose, hiatus is sometimes preferred, but the final consonant is sounded, and hiatus thus avoided:—

(a) In an adjective before its substantive: *ces bons amis, trois ouvrages, ces enfants, son orange, les excellents amis, son excellent vin.*

(b) In an adverb before the word which it qualifies: *c'est fort intéressant.*

(c) In a preposition before its noun: *as, il est sans argent.*

(d) In conjunctions (except *et*).

(e) In a pronoun which is the subject or object of a verb: *Nous avons les livres. Je les attends ici.*

(γ) These rules apply in a general way to familiar and colloquial prose, but greater freedom is allowed.

## THE VARIOUS SYMBOLS WHICH REPRESENT CONSONANT SOUNDS.

**K, G:** (kan, gant.)

**K.**

§ 52. **k** has always the hard guttural sound heard in key-word **kan**.

**G.**

**G** initial or medial.

§ 53. *g* before *a, o, u*, or before a consonant, has its own proper soft guttural sound heard in key-word *gant*: ex.: *got, guépe, gras, gland*, etc.

*g* before *e, i, y*, = : \* *gingembre, manger, mangeons.*

*g* is silent in *doigt, legs, vingt* and derivatives.

**G** final.

§ 54. *g* final is usually silent: *sang, faubourg.*

It is sounded in *joug, zigzag, grog.*

When carried on to the following vowel, it has the sound of its corresponding hard guttural **k**. It is rarely thus carried on.

---

\* It is usual to speak of this sound of *g* as 'g soft'; this is wrong, for *g* is always soft. (§ 46.)

**CH, J: (che-min, je-ter.)****CH.**

§ 55. **Ch** is usually sounded as in *chenin*.

It has the sound of **k**

(a) In almost all words derived from the Greek, as *chaos*, *archange*. (b) In the word *yacht*.

It is silent in *almanach*. In *drachme* it equals *g*.

**J.**

§ 56. **J** is always pronounced as in *jeter*.

**T, D: (te-nir, de-voir.)****T.**

§ 57. **T** initial has always its pure sound: *tard*, *tenir*.

**T** medial has usually its pure sound: *entêter*.

But it equals *s* in syllables\*:—

1. *-atie, -étie, -itie*: *démocratie*.

2. *-tiel, -tieux, -tion*: *essentiel*.

3. *-tia*: *martial*.

4. In *balbutier*, *initier*, *inertie*, *patient*, and *quotient*.†

**T** final is usually silent: *tout*, *tient*, etc. It is sounded—

(a) In most words ending in *et*: *correct*.‡

(b) In *but* (goal); *fat* (fop); *dot* (dowry).

*Est* (east); *ouest* (west).

*Sept*, seven; *huit*, eight. (§ 79).

*Fret*, freight; *aconit*, aconite; *malt*.

*Lest*, ballast; *granit*, granite.

*Brut*, in the rough; *net*, pure.

*Chut!* hush! *ut*, do (music).

(c) In semi-naturalized words from Latin: *vivat*, *déficit* etc.

\* It will be seen by comparison that in the English language words similarly spelt have a corresponding peculiarity of pronunciation:—

FRENCH.

*Ambitieux*

*Action*

*Patient*

ENGLISH.

*ambitious.*

*action.*

*patient, etc., etc.*

† *Ti* has its pure sound (1) in plural of verbs where *-ions* is merely the special ending of the tense: *étions*, *chantions*, etc.; (2) in *tiare*, *centiare*, *galimatias*; (3) in words where the sound of *s* precedes: *bastion*.

‡ Not in *distinct* and *instinct*.

**D.**

§ 58. **D** initial has always its pure sound : *dard*.

**D** medial has always its pure sound : *atarder*.

**D** final is usually silent : *il vend*.

(a) It is sounded in *éphod*, *sud*.

(b) When carried on to the next vowel, it has the sound of its hard dental *t* : *ce grand homme* *ce granthomme*. It is rarely thus carried on.

**S, Z: (sel, zèle.)****S.**

§ 59. **S** initial has always its pure sound : *si*, *se*.

**S** medial has generally its pure sound : *poisson*, *disparaître*. When placed between two vowels, it equals *z* : *rose*, *hésite*.

**S** final is generally silent : *frères*, *plats*.

(i.) It has its pure sound in :—

(a) *fil*s, son ; *mœ*urs, manners ; *plus-que-parfait*.

*mar*s, March ; *our*s, bear ; *mérin*os, merino.

*oas*is ; *maïs*, maize ; *lis*, lily.

*vis*, screw ; *tournevis*, screw-driver.

*bloc*us, blockade ; *ob*us, shell.

*jad*is, formerly.

*las* ! *hélas* ! etc.\*

(b) In semi-naturalized words from Latin : *volubilis*, *bis*.

(ii.) It has the sound of *z*, when carried on to the vowel of the next word : *vous avez* = *vouz avez*. It is generally thus carried on.

**Z.**

§ 60. **Z** initial has its pure sound : *zèle*.

**Z** medial has its pure sound : *bronze*.

**Z** final is generally silent : *nez*, *vous avez*, *chez*. When carried to next word, it has its pure sound : *chez un de mes amis*.

---

\* Also in *as*, *ès*, *us*, *eus* ; *laps*, *relaps* ; *biceps* ; *forceps* ; *albinos* ; *ambesas* ; *bibus* ; *cortès*, *kermès* ; *parisis*, *reps*.

**P, B: (pe-tit, be-deau.)****P.**

§ 61. **P initial** has always its pure sound : *pain, psaume*.

**P medial** has usually its pure sound : *accepter*.

But it is silent :

(1) In *sept*, and derivatives *septième* and *septièmement* only.

(2) In *baptême, compte, dompter, prompt, il rompt, sculpter*, and derivatives.

(3) In *exempt*, but not in *exemption*.

**P final** is usually silent : *camp, coup, drap*.

(a) It is sounded in *cap*.\*

(b) It is carried on to the next vowel only in *trop, beaucoup* : *il est trop indulgent*.

**B.**

§ 62. **B initial** has always its pure sound : *bref*.

**B medial** has always its pure sound : *Bourbon*.

**B final** is rare :

(1) In *plomb* and compounds it is silent.

(2) In other words it has its pure sound.

**F, V: (fe-ra, ve-nir).****F.**

§ 63. **F initial** has always its pure sound : *face, fer*.

**F medial** has always its pure sound : *soufre, suffire*.

**F final** has generally its pure sound : *actif, chef*.

(a) It is silent in :

(1) *clef, cerf-volant, chef-d'œuvre*.

(2) *bœufs, œufs, nerfs*, but not in *bœuf, œuf, nerf*.

(b) It has the sound of *v* in *neuf* (nine), when carried on to the next word : *neuf ans = neuv ans*.

**V.**

§ 64. **V**, whether initial or medial, has always its pure sound : *ver, activité*.

It is never final.

---

\* It is also sounded in *julep, jalap, laps, relaps, forceps, biceps, reps*, and *hanap*.

**R (re-voir).**

§ 65. **R initial** has always its pure sound : *revoir*.

**R medial** has always its pure sound : *arrêter*.

**R final** has generally its pure sound : *finir*.

- (a) **Er final** presents some difficulty. In it *r* is usually silent : ex. *aimer, donner, officier*, etc. The following words follow the general rule, and sound *r* :—1. Monosyllables, as *hier, mer*, etc. 2. *Hiver, enfer, cuiller, amer*.
- (b) Only in two other words, is *r* final unsounded : *monsieur* and its plural, *messieurs*.\*
- (c) When naturally silent it is rarely carried on to next vowel.

**L (le-ver).**

§ 66. **L initial** has always its pure sound : *laver, long*, etc.

**L medial or final** has usually its pure sound : *appeler, filer, sel, fil*. It is often “*mouillé*.” (§ 80.)

**§ 67. L mouillé.**

1. A *single l* is less often mouillé than *double l*.
2. *l* and *ll* are never mouillé unless preceded by *i*.
3. Both *l* and *ll* are mouillé when preceded by *ai, ei, eui, œi, oui* : † *travail, bataille, vieil, vieille, deuil, feuille, œil, œillet, fenouil, houille*.
4. *-uill* is mouillé : *aiguille, anguille*; but *uil* is not mouillé : *huile, tuile*. This is true of derivatives.
5. *ll* is mouillé when preceded by *i* alone. Exceptions : *mille, tranquille, ville, village, vaudeville*, etc.
6. *l* (single), preceded by *i* alone, is sounded as in *sel, fil, il*. Exceptions : (a) *l* is mouillé in *avril, péril*, etc. (b) The *l* is silent in *gentil, sourcil, fils, fusil, outil, baril, persil*, etc.

---

\* *r* is sounded in *fier* (proud), but not in *se fier* (to trust). In *sieur, monseigneur*, etc., it is sounded.

† *Aile* (wing) is the only exception. It is thus distinguished from *ail* (garlic).

**M, N.**

§ 68. The nasal consonants are more conveniently considered in connection with the nasal vowels. (§§ 37-40.)

**SUPERFLUOUS SYMBOLS.**

**Q, C, X, W, Th, Rh, Ph.**

**Q.**

§ 69. **Q** equals **k**: *quel*.

**Q** final occurs only in two words, *cing*, *coq*; in both words it is sounded like **k**.

**C.**

§ 70. **C** sometimes equals the hard guttural **k** (*kan*), sometimes it equals the hard dental **s** (*sel*).

§ 71. **C** initial or medial.

**C** before **a**, **o**, **u** = **k**: *cage*, *cor*, *culte*, *sculpteur*.

**C** before **e**, **i**, **y** = **s** pure: *cep*, *sceptique*, *ici*, *cygne*.

**C** when it has a cedilla (*ç*) under it = **s** pure: *garçon*, *reçu*, *deça*.

§ 72. **C** final is **u** lly sounded as **k**: *roc*, *avec*.

(1) It is silent in the endings **-onc**, **-anc**: *tronc*, *blanc*.

(2) It is silent in *porc*, *estomac*, *clerc*, *tabac*, *échecs*, *croc*, *accroc*, *escroc*, *lacs* (snare), *marc* (residuum).

**X.**

§ 73. **X** usually equals **ks**: *taxe*. Sometimes it equals **gz**. Sometimes the guttural sound disappears, and **x** equals **s** or **z**.

**X** initial is very rare: *Xérès* (sherry), is pronounced *zérès*.

**X** medial = **gz** when placed between two vowels: *exacte*.  
= **ss** in *soixante*, *soixantaine*, etc.  
= **z** in *deuxième*, *sixième*, *dixième*.

**X** final is usually silent: but

(1) It is sounded as **s** pure in *dix*, *six*. (§ 79.)

(2) It is sounded as **z** when carried on to the next vowel:  
*aux amis* = *auz amis*.

**W.**

§ 74. **W** sometimes equals *ou*, sometimes *v*.

In three words only does it equal *ou*, viz., *whig*, *wagon*, *whiskey*. It is rare.

**Th.**

§ 75. **Th** equals *t* pure: *le thé*, *le théâtre*.

It is never sounded as in *thin*, *though*, etc.

In *asthma* it is silent. In *zénith* it has the sound of *t*.

**Rh.**

§ 76. **Rh** always equals *r*: *rhum*, *enrhumé*.

**Ph.**

§ 77. **Ph** always equals *f* pure: *philosophe*.

**H.**

§ 78. **H** is either 'mute' as in *huître*, or 'aspirated' as in *haricot*. Even when said to be 'aspirated,' *h* is not breathed in French as in English.

In most French words the *h* is 'mute;' but there are two hundred words or more in which it is 'aspirated.'

Those words most in use,\* in which the *h* is aspirated, are—

- |                       |                          |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. le haillon, rag    | la houille, coal         |
| le hareng, herring    | la houle, surge          |
| le hasard, hazard     | la houppe, tuft          |
| le héraut, herald     | la hutte, hut            |
| le hêtre, beech       | 8. hagard, haggard       |
| le homard, lobster    | hardi, bold              |
| le houblon, hops      | haut, high               |
| le houx, holly        | hideux, hideous          |
| 2. la hache, axe      | huit, eight              |
| la haie, hedge        | 4. harasser, harass      |
| la haine, hatred      | harnacher, harness, etc. |
| la halle, market      | hennir, neigh            |
| la halte, halt        | hérissier, bristle up    |
| la harangue, harangue | heurter, knock against   |
| la harpe, harp        | hisser, hoist            |
| la hâte, haste        | hurler, howl.            |
| la honte, shame       |                          |

---

\* Complete lists may be made from a good dictionary.



If *h* is 'aspirated' in a word in its simplest form, it is also in the derivatives. Examples :

*h* aspirate : *hardi*, *hardiment*, *en-hardir*.

*h* mute : *harmonie*, *harmonieux*, *en-harmonique*.

Exceptions :

*h* is aspirated in *héros*, but not in its derivatives, *héroïne*, *héroïque*, etc.

*h* is silent in *dix-huit*, although it is aspirated in *huit*.

### NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS TO CHAPTER III.

§ 79. **Cinq, six, sept, huit, neuf, dix.**—The final consonant of *cinq*, *six*, *sept*, *huit*, *neuf*, *dix*, when followed by a word beginning with a consonant, will be sounded or not, according as a pause is possible or not between the words. To say the same thing otherwise; if the word bears the tonic accent, the consonant is sounded; if not, it is silent. This is true of various small words in which it is customary now to sound the final consonant: *but*, *fil*, *donc*, *alors*.

Examples :

1. *Cet homme en a huit* | *dans sa chambre* (*t* sounded).

2. *Ce petit enfant a huit* *dent* | *s* (*t* silent).

§ 80. **Mouillé Consonants.**—"The so-called mouillé or softened nasal, and all other mouillé consonants, are produced by the addition of a final *y*."

§ 81. **Variations in pronunciation of l mouillé.**—In Paris the sound of the following *i* or *y* is alone heard in ordinary speech, the *l* sound has been absorbed: *fil* is pronounced *fi-ye*; *feuille*, *feu-ye*; *bataillon*, *bata-yon*.

§ 82. **Modern Pronunciation of Latin in France.**—In France the pronunciation of Latin differ mostly from that of ordinary French in that :—

1st. Every *e* is pronounced as if it were accented : *leo*.

2nd. There are no nasal vowels : *factum*.

3rd. Every final consonant is sounded : *bonus*.

4th. In the syllable *qu* the *u* is sounded : *equus*.

But the tonic accent is wrongly\* laid as usual on the last syllable.

A number of semi-naturalized words follow this pronunciation, and not that of ordinary French: they are mentioned in their place: *vivat*, *exéat*, *factotum*, *album*, etc., etc. (§ 151.)

\* See *Student's French Grammar* (§ 38).

## BOOK II.—ACCIDENCE.

---

### PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 83. The Parts of Speech are of three kinds :

I. NOUNS.

II. VERBS.

III. PARTICLES.

I. The first kind consists of :

Nouns Substantive (or simply **Substantives**),

Nouns Adjective (or simply **Adjectives**),

**Pronouns.**

II. The second consists of **Verbs** only.

III. The third consists of :

**Adverbs,**

**Prepositions,**

**Conjunctions,**

**Interjections.**

Hence the Parts of Speech may be said to be eight :

**Substantives,**

**Adjectives** (including *Articles*),

**Pronouns,**

**Verbs**

(with flexion.)

**Adverbs,**

**Prepositions,**

**Conjunctions,**

**Interjections,**

(without flexion.)\*

---

\* Except Adverbs to some small extent.

## CHAPTER I.—SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

## § 84. THE SUBSTANTIVE.

Substantives may be :

1. PROPER : *Caesar, London.*
2. COMMON : *king, city.*

Common Substantives are divided into :

1. ABSTRACT : *wisdom, justice.*
2. CONCRETE : *table, air.*
3. COLLECTIVE : *multitude.*

Substantives have :

1. GENDER (or Class) : Masculine and Feminine.
2. NUMBER : Singular and Plural.
3. CASE.

*Obs.*—The case-endings found in Latin and in Old French Substantives and Adjectives have disappeared in Modern French, their places are supplied by Prepositions. In some of the Pronouns and in the Articles real cases are found. With these the cases are two : SUBJECTIVE and OBJECTIVE. It is convenient to employ these terms occasionally for Substantives and Adjectives. It is also convenient sometimes to speak of *à* as followed by a Dative, or of *de* as followed by a Genitive.

## § 85. THE ADJECTIVE.

1. Adjectives are of two kinds :

- (1) QUALIFICATIVE : *bon, grand, vert, chaud, etc.*
- (2) DETERMINATIVE : *le, son, ce, plusieurs, etc.*

2. The Qualificative Adjectives include—

- (1) Present Participles.\*
- (2) Past Participles.

3. The Qualificative Adjectives are usually capable of three varieties of form, called “*Degrees of Comparison.*”

The Positive,

The Comparative,

The Superlative.

---

\* See, however, ‘*Agreement*’ in SYNTAX.

4. The *Determinative Adjectives* include—The Article : *le*, etc.The Adjective Pronouns : *mon*, *ce*, etc.The Numerals : *un*, *premier*, etc.5. The Articles have special forms for gender, *le*, *la*; number, *le*, *les*; case, *le*, *du*, *au*.6. The Adjective Pronouns have special forms for gender, *mon*, *ma*; number, *mon*, *mes*.7. A few Numeral Adjectives have special gender or number forms : *un*, *une*; *vingt*, *quatre-vingts*; *premier*, *première*.

## ARTICLES

§ 86. The Article is a kind of Determinative Adjective.

The Articles are divided into DEFINITE and INDEFINITE.

## (1) DEFINITE ARTICLE.

|                     | SINGULAR. |              | PLURAL.    |            |                   |
|---------------------|-----------|--------------|------------|------------|-------------------|
|                     | M.        | F.           | M.         | F.         |                   |
| <i>Subjective,</i>  | <i>le</i> | <i>la</i>    | <i>les</i> | <i>les</i> | <i>the</i>        |
|                     | <i>le</i> | <i>la</i>    | <i>les</i> | <i>les</i> | <i>the</i>        |
| <i>Objective,</i> { | <i>du</i> | <i>de la</i> | <i>des</i> | <i>des</i> | { <i>of the,</i>  |
|                     | <i>au</i> | <i>à la</i>  | <i>aux</i> | <i>aux</i> | { <i>from the</i> |
|                     |           |              |            |            | <i>to the</i>     |

*Partitive Genitive.*

|           |              |            |            |               |
|-----------|--------------|------------|------------|---------------|
| <i>du</i> | <i>de la</i> | <i>des</i> | <i>des</i> | { <i>some</i> |
|           |              |            |            | <i>any</i>    |

To prevent two vowel sounds from coming together, when the next word begins with vowel or silent *h*—

|              |                           |          |           |           |              |
|--------------|---------------------------|----------|-----------|-----------|--------------|
| <i>l'</i>    | <i>is used instead of</i> |          | <i>le</i> | <i>or</i> | <i>la</i>    |
| <i>de l'</i> | <i>„</i>                  | <i>„</i> | <i>du</i> | <i>„</i>  | <i>de la</i> |
| <i>à l'</i>  | <i>„</i>                  | <i>„</i> | <i>au</i> | <i>„</i>  | <i>à la.</i> |

## (2) INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

|                     | M.          | F.           |                     |
|---------------------|-------------|--------------|---------------------|
| <i>Subjective,</i>  | <i>un</i>   | <i>une,</i>  | <i>a</i>            |
| <i>Objective,</i> { | <i>un</i>   | <i>une</i>   | <i>a</i>            |
|                     | <i>d'un</i> | <i>d'une</i> | <i>of a, from a</i> |
|                     | <i>à un</i> | <i>à une</i> | <i>to a.</i>        |

## FORMATION OF FEMININE IN ADJECTIVES.

§ 87. Unless the masculine already ends in *e* unaccented, that letter is added to it: *clair, claire*. But changes are often made before the *e* is added:

I. If the Masculine ends—

(a) In *f*, the *f* is changed into *v*: *neuf, neuve*.

(b) In *x*, the *x* is changed into *s*: *glorieux, glorieuse*.

But *vieux*, old, has *vieille*, from *vieil*.

„ *doux*, sweet, has *douce*.

„ *roux*, reddish, has *rousse*.

„ *faux*, false, has *fausse*.

„ *préfix*, prefix, has *préfixe*.

(c) In *-eur* the *r* is changed into *s*: *trompeur, trompeuse*.

(1) The following comparatives simply add *e* mute:

|                    |                    |                  |
|--------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| <i>meilleur</i>    | <i>meilleure</i>   | <i>better</i>    |
| <i>majeur</i>      | <i>majeure</i>     | <i>major</i>     |
| <i>mineur</i>      | <i>mineure</i>     | <i>minor</i>     |
| <i>supérieur</i>   | <i>supérieure</i>  | <i>superior</i>  |
| <i>inférieur</i>   | <i>inférieure</i>  | <i>inferior</i>  |
| <i>antérieur</i>   | <i>antérieure</i>  | <i>anterior</i>  |
| <i>postérieure</i> | <i>postérieure</i> | <i>posterior</i> |
| <i>extérieur</i>   | <i>extérieure</i>  | <i>exterior</i>  |
| <i>ultérieur</i>   | <i>ultérieure</i>  | <i>ulterior</i>  |

(2) Most words in *-teur* \* make *-trice*.

|                   |                    |                 |
|-------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>accusateur</i> | <i>accusatrice</i> | <i>accusing</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------|-----------------|

(d) In *-ien, -eil, -as, † -on*, the consonant is doubled.

Similarly:

|                  |                 |                |
|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| <i>bel†</i> }    | <i>belle</i>    | <i>fine</i>    |
| <i>beau</i> }    |                 |                |
| <i>nouvel†</i> } | <i>nouvelle</i> | <i>new</i>     |
| <i>nouveau</i> } |                 |                |
| <i>fol†</i> }    | <i>folle</i>    | <i>foolish</i> |
| <i>fou</i> }     |                 |                |
| <i>mol†</i> }    | <i>molle</i>    | <i>soft</i>    |
| <i>mou</i> }     |                 |                |
| <i>gentil</i>    | <i>gentille</i> | <i>pretty</i>  |

\* Words in *-teur* are really substantives.

† *Ras* only has *rase*.

‡ This older form is now only employed before a vowel or *h* unaspirated, to avoid hiatus: *un bel homme, un nouvel accident*.

|          |            |          |
|----------|------------|----------|
| nul      | nulle      | null     |
| épais    | épaisse    | thick    |
| express  | expresse.  | express. |
| gros     | grosse     | big      |
| sot      | sothe      | silly    |
| bellot   | bellotte   | pretty   |
| vieillot | vieillotte | oldish   |

(e) In **-et** the consonant is usually doubled: *muet, muette*.\*

But an accent is put instead in the following words :

|         |          |          |
|---------|----------|----------|
| discret | discrète | discreet |
| replet  | replète  | replete  |
| inquiet | inquiète | uneasy   |
| secret  | secrète  | secret   |
| concret | concrète | concrete |
| complet | complète | complete |

(f) In **-er** an accent is put : *cher, chère*, dear.

II. The following Adjectives, by modifying the ending, try to keep the sound of the masculine :

|        |          |          |
|--------|----------|----------|
| grec   | grecque  | Greek    |
| ture   | turque   | Turkish  |
| public | publique | public   |
| caduc  | caduque  | decrepit |
| long   | longue   | long     |

III. The following Adjectives have **-che** in the feminine :

|         |         |                   |
|---------|---------|-------------------|
| frais   | fraîche | fresh             |
| blanc   | blanche | white             |
| franc † | franche | frank (= sincere) |
| sec     | sèche   | dry               |

The following Adjectives have **-t** in the feminine :

|         |          |           |
|---------|----------|-----------|
| favori  | favorite | favourite |
| coi     | coite    | snug      |
| absous  | absoute  | absolved  |
| dissons | dissoute | dissolved |

\* Compare *Verbs*. † *Franç*, the proper name, has *franque*.

## PLURAL IN ADJECTIVES AND SUBSTANTIVES.

### § 88. Plural of ordinary Adjectives and Substantives.

#### GENERAL RULE.

- The letter *s* is added to the singular.

#### SPECIAL RULES AND EXCEPTIONS.

- (1) If the singular ends in—

-*s*, -*x*, -*z*, no change is needed.  
 -*au*, -*eu*, \* -*x* is added.  
 -*al*, the -*al* is changed into *aux*.

- (2) Seven words in -*ou* have *x*:

|         |                  |          |
|---------|------------------|----------|
| bijou   | <i>jewel</i>     | bijoux   |
| caillou | <i>pebbles</i>   | cailloux |
| genou   | <i>knee</i>      | genoux   |
| hibou   | <i>owl</i>       | hiboux   |
| chou    | <i>cabbage</i>   | choux    |
| joujou  | <i>plaything</i> | joujoux  |
| pou     | <i>louse</i>     | poux     |

- (3) Five words in -*ail* have *aux*:

|           |                     |           |
|-----------|---------------------|-----------|
| bail      | <i>lease</i>        | baux      |
| corail    | <i>coral</i>        | coraux    |
| émail     | <i>enamel</i>       | émaux     |
| vitrail   | <i>glass window</i> | vitraux   |
| soupirail | <i>air-hole</i>     | soupiraux |

- (4) The singular of *yeux*, *eyes*, is *œil*.

*aïeux*, *ancestors*, is *aïeul*.

*cieux*, *heavens*, is *ciel*.

*travaux*, *works*, is *travail*.

### § 89. Plural of Words taken substantively.

Verbs, prepositions, conjunctions, etc., used substantively, remain unchanged under all circumstances,† *ex.* :

*Les qui, les oui, les oui-dire, les rendez-vous.*

\* Except *bleu*, *bleus*, *feu*, *late*, *feus* (rare).

† Such words are always masculine. (See § 98.)

## § 90. Plural of Proper Names.

(1) In French a proper name, AS SUCH, is incapable of plural: *Les deux Corneille*.

(2) In imitation of the Latin, the plural form is given to a few names of families; as, *Les Horaces* (Horatii), *les Gracques* (Gracchi), *les Bourbons*, *les Stuarts*, etc.

(3) A proper name may be accidentally employed as a common substantive, and can then take a plural:

*Il y a plusieurs Raphaëls au Louvre.*

*There are several Raphaels in the Louvre* (i.e., paintings).

## § 91. Plural of Foreign Words.

When a foreign word (or whatever part of speech it may originally have been) has become thoroughly naturalized as a noun, it takes the marks of the plural according to the rules which are usual in the language into which it is adopted. Hence the difficulty reduces itself to deciding whether the word is naturalized or not.

In the following list will be found most of those words about which there may be doubt in French.

(a) The following take s:

## LATIN.

|           |                    |           |                   |
|-----------|--------------------|-----------|-------------------|
| accessit  | 'proxime accessit' | memento   | memento.          |
| agenda*   | memorandum-book    | minimum   | minimum.          |
| alibi     | alibi              | maximum   | maximum           |
| à part    | aside              | pensum    | imposition (task) |
| débet     | balance-due        | placet    | petition          |
| déficit   | deficit            | quiproquo | quidproquo        |
| duplicata | duplicate          | quolibet  | jest              |
| errata†   | errata             | récipissé | receipt           |
| exeat     | leave              | recto     | right-hand page   |
| factotum  | factotum           | reliquat  | balance           |
| forum     | forum              | verso     | left-hand page    |
| folio     | folio              | visa      | visa              |
| impromptu | impromptu          | ultimatum | ultimatum         |

\* *Duplicata*, *agenda*, *errata*, *lazzi*, *macaroni*, are plural words which have been naturalized in French as nouns of the singular number. *Concetti* and *dilettanti* are similarly employed, but are not so established.



## GREEK.

|         |                |          |                 |
|---------|----------------|----------|-----------------|
| dogma   | <i>dogma</i>   | panorama | <i>panorama</i> |
| diorama | <i>diorama</i> |          |                 |

## ITALIAN.

|          |                 |           |                  |
|----------|-----------------|-----------|------------------|
| alto     | <i>alto</i>     | imbroglio | <i>confusion</i> |
| concerto | <i>concerto</i> | lazzi     | <i>jest</i>      |
| duo      | <i>duo</i>      | oratorio  | <i>oratorio</i>  |
| finale   | <i>end</i>      | trio      | <i>trio</i>      |

## SPANISH.

|         |                |       |                      |
|---------|----------------|-------|----------------------|
| embargo | <i>embargo</i> | aviso | <i>dispatch-bout</i> |
|---------|----------------|-------|----------------------|

## GERMAN.

|          |                 |        |               |
|----------|-----------------|--------|---------------|
| landwehr | <i>landwehr</i> | thaler | <i>thaler</i> |
|----------|-----------------|--------|---------------|

(b) The following do not take s :

|     |          |            |
|-----|----------|------------|
| (1) | alleluia | magnificat |
|     | avé      | Te-Deum    |
|     | credo    | miseréré   |

and other similar ecclesiastical words.

|     |               |            |
|-----|---------------|------------|
| (2) | ex-voto       | ecce-homo  |
|     | fac-simile    | in-octavo  |
|     | post-scriptum | auto-da-fé |

and other similar compound words.

## § 92. Plural of Compound Substantives and Adjectives.

Compound substantives and adjectives are for the most part nothing but shortened phrases.

In the greater number of such words some of the connecting words are omitted, and their place is supplied by a hyphen : ex., *un casse-tête*, *tomakawk*.

In some the hyphen is present when there is no such omission : *aide-de-camp*.

In a very small number the various parts are joined together without a hyphen, and yet the word is treated as compound : *monsieur*.

## EASY EXAMPLES.

## A.

In such compound words as the following, the phrase is complete. In some a hyphen is put; more generally it is omitted.

|                   |                     |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| un aide-de-camp   |                     | des aides-de-camp   |
| un arc-en-ciel    | <i>rainbow</i>      | des arcs-en-ciel    |
| un chef-d'œuvre   | <i>master-piece</i> | des chefs-d'œuvre   |
| un clin d'œil     | <i>wink, glance</i> | des clins-d'œil     |
| un maître-ès-arts | <i>M.A.</i>         | des maîtres-ès-arts |
| un coup de pied   | <i>kick</i>         | des coups de pied   |

## B.

“An adjective agrees in gender and number with the substantive with which it is in attribution.” (v. *Syntax*.)

1. Hence such plurals as the following :

|                   |                       |                    |
|-------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| un beau-frère     | <i>brother-in-law</i> | des beaux-frères   |
| un rouge-gorge    | <i>robin</i>          | des rouges-gorges  |
| un franc-maçon    | <i>free-mason</i>     | des francs-maçons  |
| une chauve-souris | <i>bat</i>            | des chauves-souris |
| un état-major     | <i>staff</i>          | des états-majors   |
| une basse-cour    | <i>poultry-yard</i>   | des basses-cours   |

2. In the following words one of the substantives is used adjectively :

|                       |                     |                          |
|-----------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| un chou-fleur         | <i>cauliflower</i>  | des choux-fleurs         |
| un oiseau-mouche      | <i>humming-bird</i> | des oiseaux-mouches      |
| un lieutenant-colonel |                     | des lieutenants-colonels |

3. The following words, although written like simple words, are treated as compound, and come under the same rule of agreement :

|              |                  |                |
|--------------|------------------|----------------|
| bonhomme     | <i>good soul</i> | bonshommes     |
| gentilhomme  | <i>nobleman</i>  | gentilshommes  |
| monseigneur  | <i>my lord</i>   | messeigneurs   |
| monsieur     | <i>Mr.</i>       | messieurs      |
| madame       | <i>Mrs.</i>      | mesdames       |
| mademoiselle | <i>Miss</i>      | mesdemoiselles |

C<sub>t</sub>

"Verbs, prepositions, conjunctions, etc., used substantively, remain unchanged under all circumstances." (§ 89.) Hence

|              |                    |                       |                     |
|--------------|--------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| (pr. + n.)   | un avant-poste     | <i>out-post</i>       | des avant-postes    |
| (adv. + n.)  | une arrière-pensée | <i>secret thought</i> | des arrière-pensées |
| (v. + pr.)   | un rendez-vous     | <i>meeting</i>        | des rendez-vous     |
| (v. + v.)    | un ouï-dire        | <i>hearsay</i>        | des ouï-dire        |
| (pp. + adv.) | une après-midi     | <i>afternoon</i>      | des après-midi      |

## GENDER.

§ 93. Gender is a grammatical word which means class or kind: it is only applied to words.

Nouns have two genders in French,—**The Masculine and the Feminine.** Nouns have no Neuter.

## PART I.

## SUBSTANTIVES SIGNIFYING THINGS WITH SEX.

§ 94. Names of males are usually masculine; but not always.

Names of females are usually feminine; but not always.

§ 95. Many substantives, signifying things with sex, have a masculine word for the male, and a feminine word for the female.\* (§ 142).

They show these forms in two ways:

(a.) By the use of a different word.

## PERSONS:

|        |                   |       |
|--------|-------------------|-------|
| frère  | <i>brother</i>    | sœur  |
| garçon | <i>boy</i>        | fille |
| gendre | <i>son-in-law</i> | bru   |
| homme  | <i>man</i>        | femme |

---

\* It is evident that the more common the animal, or the greater the difference in appearance between the male and the female, the more certainly will there be a double form.

|         |                   |           |
|---------|-------------------|-----------|
| moine   | <i>monk</i>       | religieux |
| neveu   | <i>nephew</i>     | nièce     |
| oncle   | <i>uncle</i>      | tante     |
| père    | <i>father</i>     | mère      |
| parrain | <i>god-father</i> | marraine  |

## ANIMALS :

|          |                  |        |
|----------|------------------|--------|
| bélier   | <i>ram</i>       | brébis |
| bouc     | <i>he-goat</i>   | chèvre |
| cerf     | <i>stag</i>      | biche  |
| coq      | <i>cock</i>      | poule  |
| étalon   | <i>stallion</i>  | jument |
| jars     | <i>gander</i>    | oie    |
| lièvre   | <i>hare</i>      | hase   |
| singe    | <i>monkey</i>    | guenon |
| sanglier | <i>wild-boar</i> | laie   |
| verrat   | <i>boar</i>      | truie  |

## (β.) By the use of suffixes.

The feminine is usually formed from the masculine according to rules given for adjectives :

|            |               |                                  |
|------------|---------------|----------------------------------|
| serin      | <i>canary</i> | serine                           |
| lion       | <i>lion</i>   | lionne                           |
| tourtereau | <i>dove</i>   | tourterelle <i>etc., &amp;c.</i> |

## EXCEPTIONS :

(1) The following words in -e have -esse :

|          |                |             |
|----------|----------------|-------------|
| comte    | <i>count</i>   | comtesse    |
| druide   | <i>druid</i>   | druidesse   |
| hôte     | <i>host</i>    | hôtesse     |
| maître   | <i>master</i>  | maîtresse   |
| maire    | <i>mayor</i>   | mairesse    |
| négre    | <i>negro</i>   | négresse    |
| ogre     | <i>ogre</i>    | ogresse     |
| prêtre   | <i>priest</i>  | prêtresse   |
| prince   | <i>prince</i>  | princesse   |
| prophète | <i>prophet</i> | prophétesse |

|         |                |            |
|---------|----------------|------------|
| traître | <i>traitor</i> | traîtresse |
| âne     | <i>ass</i>     | ânesse     |
| tigre   | <i>tiger</i>   | tigresse   |

(2) The following without *-e* also have *-sse* :

|           |                  |              |
|-----------|------------------|--------------|
| abbé      | <i>abbot</i>     | abbesse      |
| duc       | <i>duke</i>      | duchesse     |
| baïlleur  | <i>lessor</i>    | bailleresse  |
| demandeur | <i>plaintiff</i> | demanderesse |
| défendeur | <i>defendant</i> | défenderesse |
| dieu      | <i>god</i>       | déesse       |
| pair      | <i>peer</i>      | pairesse     |

(3) Nouns in *-teur*, have *-trice* :

*accusateur accusatrice.*

(4) Also the following :

|             |                   |              |
|-------------|-------------------|--------------|
| empereur    | <i>emperor</i>    | impératrice  |
| chanteur    | <i>singer</i>     | chanteuse*   |
| ambassadeur | <i>ambassador</i> | ambassadrice |

(5) *Various suffixes :*

|                |                  |             |
|----------------|------------------|-------------|
| (a) fils       | <i>son</i>       | filie       |
| loup           | <i>wolf</i>      | louve       |
| paysan         | <i>peasant</i>   | paysanne    |
| daim           | <i>deer</i>      | daine       |
| héros          | <i>hero</i>      | héroïne     |
| roi            | <i>king</i>      | reine       |
| poulain        | <i>colt</i>      | pouliche    |
| perroquet      | <i>parrot</i>    | perruche    |
| chevreuil      | <i>roe-buck</i>  | chevrette   |
| (b) gouverneur | <i>tutor</i>     | gouvernante |
| serviteur      | <i>servant</i>   | servante    |
| (c) compagnon  | <i>companion</i> | compagne    |
| (d) dindon     | <i>turkey</i>    | dinde       |
| canard         | <i>drake</i>     | cane        |

---

\* *Cantatrice* is a professional singer.

## PART II.

*SUBSTANTIVES SIGNIFYING THINGS WITHOUT SEX.*

§ 96. Names of things without sex are sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine. There are no neuter nouns in French; most Latin neuters have become masculine.

## RULE OF 'MUTE E.'

1. Substantives which end in 'mute e' are feminine.
2. Substantives which do not end in 'mute e' are masculine.

§ 97. The exceptions are numerous; they amount to about a tenth of the whole number.

These exceptions may be most conveniently arranged in three principal classes:\*

**CLASS I.** Nouns in which the meaning affords the simplest or the only clue to the gender:

*un frêne*, an ash (name of tree);  
*un livre* (book); *une livre* (pound).

**CLASS II.** Nouns which are feminine, although they do not end in e mute:

*la loi*, *la douleur*, etc.

**CLASS III.** Nouns which are masculine, although they do end in e mute:

*le verbe*, *le beurre*, etc.

Each of these classes may be further divided into:

(1) Those nouns which break through the rule of the 'mute e,' because of the etymology. Such words are not irregular—they only obey another rule. They are always given first.

(2) Those which break through the rule of the 'mute e' without any such reason. Only these words can be called 'irregular.' They are few in number.

---

\* The classification corresponds for the most part to that in §§ 232-272, *Student's French Grammar*, where the reason of the gender is given, when such reason is known.

## CLASS I.

**Nouns in which the meaning affords the best or the only clue to the gender.**

§ 98. Masculine are :

1. Adjectives, verbs, conjunctions, etc., taken substantively: *un être*, a being; *le rire*, laughter; *le repentir*, repentance.

2. Trees and shrubs: as, *un frêne*, an ash; *le genévrier*, juniper.

EXCEPTIONS to 2.—*Epine*, thorn; with compounds, *aubépine*, hawthorn, etc.; *bourdaine*, alder-buckthorn; *ronce*, briar; *vigne*, vine; *viorne*, viburnum; *yeuse*, evergreen-oak.

8. Metals and minerals: as *l'or*, gold; *le cuivre*, copper.

4. The decimal system of money, weights and measures.

5. Seasons, months, days of the week.

§ 99. *Substantives with Double Gender.*

|               |                  |              |               |
|---------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. un aune    | alder            | une aune     | ell           |
| un livre      | book             | une livre    | pound         |
| 2. un poêle   | stove            | une poêle    | frying-pan    |
| un somme      | nap              | une somme    | sum           |
| un tour       | turn             | une tour     | tower         |
| un moule      | mould            | une moule    | mussel        |
| un crêpe      | crape [time.     | une crêpe    | pancake       |
| 3. un office  | duty, church-    | une office   | pantry        |
| un voile      | veil, pretence   | une voile    | sail          |
| un manche     | handle           | une manche   | sleeve        |
| 4. un pendule | pendulum         | une pendule  | clock         |
| 5. le faux    | forgery, etc.    | la faux      | scythe        |
| le fin        | gist             | la fin       | end           |
| le vague      | vagueness        | la vague     | wave          |
| 6. un couple  | couple (married) | une couple   | couple, brace |
| les gens      | resolute people  | les vieilles | old people *  |
| résolus       |                  | gens         |               |
| personne      | nobody           | une personne | person        |
| quelque       | something        | une chose    | a thing       |
| chose         |                  |              |               |
| merci         | thanks           | la merci     | mercy         |
| le poste      | post (situation) | la poste     | post (mail)   |
| 7. le mémoire | bill             | la mémoire   | memory        |
| le remise     | fly, cab         | la remise    | remittance    |

\* The adjective which precedes *gens* is always feminine, the adjective which follows is always masculine.

8. The following are common in the masculine, but very rare in the feminine :

|               |                            |              |                      |
|---------------|----------------------------|--------------|----------------------|
| un espace     | <i>space</i>               | le quadrille | <i>quadrille</i>     |
| le givre      | <i>hoar-frost</i>          | le réclame   | <i>advertisement</i> |
| un interligne | <i>space between lines</i> | le relâche   | <i>rest</i>          |
|               |                            | le triomphe  | <i>triumph</i>       |

## CLASS II.

**Nouns which are feminine, although they do not end in 'e mute.'**

§ 100. Feminine nouns which do not end in 'e mute' are only found ending in a, é i, f, m, n, r, s, t, u, x.

The greater number of nouns even with these endings are masculine.

§ 101. *Feminine Nouns ending in -a.*

la polka, la villa, la véranda, la sépia.

§ 102. *Feminine Nouns ending in -é.*

Only nouns in -té, -tié, are feminine. They are mostly derived from Latin words in -tatem of the feminine gender :  
la vérité, veritatem.

§ 103. *Feminine Nouns ending in -i.*

(a) From Latin feminines are derived :

la loi      law      la foi      faith

(b) Is irregular :

la paroi      partition

§ 104. *Feminine Nouns ending in -f.*

From Latin feminines are derived :

la nef      nave      la clef      key  
la soif      thirst

§ 105. *Feminine Nouns ending in -m.*

From the Latin feminine is :

la faim      hunger

---

\* Masculines in -té are un pâté, pie ; un traité, treaty ; un côté, side, etc.



§ 106. *Feminine Nouns ending in -n.*

(a) Almost all feminine nouns in *-n* are derived from feminine Latin nouns in *-ionem* :

(1) Nouns in *-ion*: *la légion* (*legionem*). (2) Nouns in *-aison*: *la maison*, house (*mansionem*). (3) *La façon*, workmanship; *la contrefaçon*, forgery; *la leçon*, lesson; *la rançon*, ransom. (4) *La boisson*, drink; *la moisson*, harvest; *la cuisson*, cooking. (5) *La toison*, fleece; *la cloison*, partition. (6) *La prison* *la trahison*, treason. (7) *La chanson*, song.

(b) The following are not derived from Latin nouns in *-ionem*, but are feminine like those which are so derived :

*la garnison*, garrison; *la guérison*, cure.\*

(c) Are also feminine as in Latin :

*la main*, hand; *la fin*, end.

§ 107. *Feminine nouns ending in -r.*

(a) Are feminine in Latin : *la chair*, flesh; *la cour*, court;

(b) Are irregular : (1) *la cuiller*, spoon; *la mer*, sea.

(2) *Abstract nouns in -eur*.—Abstract nouns in *-eur* are mostly derived from Latin nouns in *-or*, *-orem*: *color*, *colorem*. The Latin nouns are **MASCULINE**: *colorem*. The French nouns are **FEMININE**: *la couleur*.

(3) *Concrete Nouns in -eur*.—The only concrete feminine nouns in *-eur* are—*la vapeur*, vapour; *la fleur*, flower; *les mœurs*, manners; *la liqueur*, liquor. These also are masculine in Latin.†

\* 1. Masculines in *-ion* are *million*, *bastion*, and *lampion*, etc. 2. All words in *-son* (not *-aison*), and *-çon*, which are not given, are masculine. None of these masculines are from Latin nouns in *-ionem*. They are perfectly regular.

† Only *honneur*, *deshonneur*, and *labeur* are masculine as in Latin. *Le bonheur*, good luck, and *malheur*, ill luck, are compounds of *bon* and *heur*, *mal* and *heur* respectively. *Heur* from *augurium*, like *augure*, is also masculine. It is now obsolete.

§ 108. *Feminine Nouns ending in -s.*

|                 |       |                  |       |
|-----------------|-------|------------------|-------|
| <b>une fois</b> | once  | <b>une oasis</b> | oasis |
| <b>une vis</b>  | screw |                  |       |

§ 109. *Feminine Nouns ending in -t.*

(a) From Latin feminines are derived :

|                 |        |                |       |
|-----------------|--------|----------------|-------|
| <b>la mort</b>  | death  | <b>la dot</b>  | dowry |
| <b>la nuit</b>  | night  | <b>la part</b> | part. |
| <b>la forêt</b> | forest |                |       |

(b) Is irregular : **la dent**, tooth.

§ 110. *Feminine Nouns ending in -u.*

(a) From Latin feminines are derived :

|                |       |                 |        |
|----------------|-------|-----------------|--------|
| <b>l'eau</b>   | water | <b>la vertu</b> | virtue |
| <b>la peau</b> | skin  | <b>la tribu</b> | tribe. |

(b) Is irregular : **la glu**, birdlime:

§ 111. *Feminine Nouns ending in -x*

Are all derived from feminine Latin nouns :

|                 |       |                 |       |
|-----------------|-------|-----------------|-------|
| <b>la paix</b>  | peace | <b>la toux</b>  | cough |
| <b>la croix</b> | cross | <b>la chaux</b> | chalk |
| <b>la noix</b>  | nut   | <b>la poix</b>  | pitch |
| <b>la voix</b>  | voice |                 |       |

CLASS III.

**Nouns which are masculine, although they end in 'e mute.'**\*

§ 112. *Masculine Nouns ending in -be.*

(a) From Latin masculines are derived :

|                |      |                 |       |
|----------------|------|-----------------|-------|
| <b>le cube</b> | cube | <b>le globe</b> | globe |
| <b>le tube</b> | tube |                 |       |

(b) From Latin neuters are derived :

|                    |         |                  |        |
|--------------------|---------|------------------|--------|
| <b>le verbe</b>    | verb    | <b>l'adverbe</b> | adverb |
| <b>le proverbe</b> | proverb |                  |        |

---

\* OBS.— Only the most important words are given here. Longer lists and the Latin, etc., are given in §§ 252-270, *Student's French Grammar*.

§ 113. *Masculine Nouns ending in -ce.*

(a) From Latin neuters are derived :

|             |          |              |           |
|-------------|----------|--------------|-----------|
| un artifice | artifice | un précipice | precipice |
| un bénéfice | benefice | un service   | service   |
| un édifice  | edifice  | le vice      | vice      |
| un hospice  | hospital | etc.         |           |

(b) le commerce commerce le divorce divorce  
 le négoce trade le silence silence  
 etc.

(c) From Latin masculines are derived :

|           |       |          |       |
|-----------|-------|----------|-------|
| le calice | calyx | le ponce | thumb |
|-----------|-------|----------|-------|

(d) Is also regularly masculine :

|            |         |
|------------|---------|
| le caprice | caprice |
|------------|---------|

(e) Is irregular :

|              |          |
|--------------|----------|
| un appendice | appendix |
|--------------|----------|

§ 114. *Masculine Nouns ending in -de.*

(a) From Latin masculines are :

|          |       |          |       |
|----------|-------|----------|-------|
| le coude | elbow | le monde | world |
| le grade | rank  | etc.     |       |

(b) From Latin neuters are :

|           |        |            |          |
|-----------|--------|------------|----------|
| le remède | remedy | l'homicide | homicide |
| etc.      |        |            |          |

§ 115. *Masculine Nouns ending in -ée.*

From Latin neuters are :

|          |        |          |         |
|----------|--------|----------|---------|
| le musée | museum | le lycée | college |
| etc.     |        |          |         |

§ 116. *Masculine Nouns ending in -fe, -phe.*

|               |      |               |
|---------------|------|---------------|
| le golfe      | gulf | le télégraphe |
| le paragraphe | etc. |               |

§ 117. *Masculine Nouns ending in -ge.*

(a) Almost all words in **-age** are masculine : \* *le courage, le fromage, le village, etc., etc.*

(b) From Latin masculines and neuters are most words in **-ége, -ige, -oge, -uge**. They are masculine in French : *le collège; le vestige; un éloge, praise; le déluge.*

(c) Are also neuter in Latin :

|                 |       |                 |       |
|-----------------|-------|-----------------|-------|
| <b>le linge</b> | linen | <b>le songe</b> | dream |
|-----------------|-------|-----------------|-------|

(d) Is masculine in Latin :

|                  |       |
|------------------|-------|
| <b>le cierge</b> | taper |
|------------------|-------|

(e) Are irregular :

|                    |        |                   |          |
|--------------------|--------|-------------------|----------|
| <b>le mensonge</b> | lie    | <b>l'échange</b>  | exchange |
| <b>le change</b>   | change | <b>le mélange</b> | mixture  |

§ 118. *Masculine Nouns ending in -he*

Are masculine :

|                   |       |                    |          |
|-------------------|-------|--------------------|----------|
| <b>un panache</b> | plume | <b>un reproche</b> | reproach |
| <b>un mythe</b>   | myth  |                    |          |

§ 119. *Masculine Nouns ending in -ie.*

(a) From Latin masculine is :

|                 |         |
|-----------------|---------|
| <b>le génie</b> | genius. |
|-----------------|---------|

(b) From Latin neuters are :

|                    |      |                |       |
|--------------------|------|----------------|-------|
| <b>un incendie</b> | fire | <b>le foie</b> | liver |
|--------------------|------|----------------|-------|

(c) Is also regularly masculine :

|                     |          |
|---------------------|----------|
| <b>le parapluie</b> | umbrella |
|---------------------|----------|

---

\* Feminines : *la cage; la rage; la page; une image, picture; la plage, shore; la nage, swimming; le tige, stalk; la loge, lodge, box.*

§ 120. *Masculine Nouns ending in -le.*

(a) Many words in *-le* are diminutives, and follow the gender of their corresponding primitive.\* Some do not possess a French primitive, but only a Latin or Italian one.

|                |                                                                     |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| un animalcule  | animalcule ( <i>animal</i> )                                        |
| un corpuscule  | corpuscule ( <i>corps</i> , body)                                   |
| un granule     | granule ( <i>grain</i> )                                            |
| un monticule   | hillock ( <i>mont</i> , hill)                                       |
| un codicille   | codicil ( <i>code</i> )                                             |
| un violoncelle | violoncello, It. ( <i>violone</i> , It., <i>bass-viol</i> )         |
| le vermicelle  | vermicelli ( <i>ver</i> , worm)                                     |
| un couvercle   | lid ( <i>couvert</i> , cover)                                       |
| un article     | article ( <i>artus</i> , Lat., joint)—<br><i>etc.</i> , <i>etc.</i> |

(b) From various Latin masculines are:

|           |        |          |       |
|-----------|--------|----------|-------|
| un angle  | angle  | le style | style |
| le peuple | people | le zèle  | zeal  |
| le pôle   | pole   |          |       |

(c) From various Latin neuters are:

|                                             |              |             |                  |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------|-------------|------------------|
| le miracle, and other words in <i>-acle</i> |              |             |                  |
| le sable                                    | sand         | le concile  | council          |
| le cable                                    | cable        | le domicile | house            |
| le siècle                                   | century, age | l'évangile  | gospel           |
| le temple                                   | temple       | le girofle  | clove            |
| un asile                                    | asylum       | le trèfle   | clover           |
| le crible                                   | sieve        | le seigle   | rye, <i>etc.</i> |

(d) From the Greek is:

|           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| le dédale | labyrinth. |
|-----------|------------|

(e) Are irregular:

|            |         |          |                 |
|------------|---------|----------|-----------------|
| un ongle   | nail    | le rôle  | roll, character |
| le trouble | trouble | le châle | shawl           |

---

\* Compare *la pellicule* and *la peau*, *etc.*, *etc.*

§ 121. *Masculine Nouns ending in -me.*

(a) Masculine are nouns ending in—

1. -ème, -ême: *le thème, le baptême.* (Ex. *la crème.*)2. -ome, ôme, -aume: *un idiome, le royaume.*3. -asme, -isme: *le catéchisme, le sarcasme.*

They mostly come from the Greek.

(b) Are also from the Greek:

le drame                drama                le rhume      a cold

le programme    programme

From Latin neuters are:

le baume            balsam            le régime      rule, government

le charme          charm            le légume      vegetable

le crime            crime            le volume      volume

(c) Are irregular:

le blâme            blame            l'estime        esteem

le calme            calm            le vacarme     uproar

§ 122. *Masculine Nouns ending in -ne.*

(a) From Latin masculines are derived:

le cône            cone            le trône        throne

le peigne          comb

(b) From Latin neuters are derived:

le domaine        domain        le prône        sermon

le jeûne            fast            le règne        reign

un organe        organ (body) le signe        sign

le patrimoine    patrimony

(c) From the Greek are:

le phénomène    phenomenon le crâne        skull

§ 123. *Masculine Nouns ending in -pe.*

(a) From Latin neuters are:

le participe      participle      le principe    principle

(b) Are also masculine:

le groupe        group            le télescope    telescope

le microscope    microscope      etc.

§ 124. *Masculine Nouns ending in -re.*

(a) Nouns in **-aire** are mostly masculine: *le vocabulaire*, vocabulary.

(b) Nouns in **-oire** are mostly masculine: *un auditoire*.\*

(c) From various Latin masculines are derived :

|             |          |              |             |
|-------------|----------|--------------|-------------|
| le coffre   | trunk    | le caractère | disposition |
| le cylindre | cylinder | le concombre | cucumber    |
| le nombre   | number   | l'ordre      | order       |
| le pore     | pore     | le désordre  | disorder    |

(d) From various Latin neuters are derived :

|               |                |              |            |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|------------|
| un antre      | cave           | le genre     | gender     |
| un astre      | star           | le ministère | ministry   |
| un augure     | augury         | le monstre   | monster    |
| le beurre     | butter         | le murmure   | murmur     |
| le cadavre    | corpse         | le mystère   | mystery    |
| le candélabre | candelabrum    | le plâtre    | plaster    |
| le cautère    | cautery        | le poivre    | pepper     |
| le centre     | centre         | le pupitre   | desk       |
| le chanvre    | hemp           | le registre  | register   |
| le cimetière  | cemetery       | le sacre     | coronation |
| le cloître    | cloister       | le sceptre   | sceptre    |
| le délire     | delirium       | le sépulcre  | sepulchre  |
| le désastre   | disaster       | le théâtre   | theatre    |
| un empire     | empire         | le timbre    | stamp      |
| l'emplâtre    | plaster (med.) | le tonnerre  | thunder    |
| l'équilibre   | equilibrium    | le verre     | glass      |
| un esclandre  | a scandal      |              |            |

\* Feminines in **-qire** are :

1. Nouns formed from a **present** participle exactly corresponding.

|                      |         |                  |                      |
|----------------------|---------|------------------|----------------------|
| <i>la mâchoire</i>   | jaw     | <i>mâchant</i>   | chewing              |
| <i>la rôtissoire</i> | roaster | <i>rôtissant</i> | roasting, etc., etc. |

2. Also *la gloire* glory *l'armoire* cupboard  
*la victoire* victory *l'écritoire* writing-desk  
*l'histoire* history *une poire* pear

(e) From the Greek are :

|                    |           |            |            |
|--------------------|-----------|------------|------------|
| un orchestre       | orchestra | le gouffre | abyss      |
| le baromètre, etc. |           | le phare   | lighthouse |
| le cidre           | cider     | le météore | meteor     |

(f) From various sources are :

|               |          |            |               |
|---------------|----------|------------|---------------|
| le cadre      | frame    | le fiacre  | hackney-coach |
| le calibre    | calibre  | le fifre   | fife          |
| le camphre    | camphor  | le filtre  | filter        |
| le chiffre    | cipher   | le meurtre | murder        |
| le cigare     | cigar    | le navire  | ship          |
| le cimenterie | scimitar | le sabre   | sword         |
| le feutre     | felt     |            |               |

(g) Are irregular :

|             |          |              |             |
|-------------|----------|--------------|-------------|
| un arbre    | tree     | le store     | blind       |
| le lierre   | ivy      |              |             |
| le massacre | massacre | le reverbère | street-lamp |

§ 125. *Masculine Nouns ending in se.*

(a) Is regularly masculine :

|             |           |
|-------------|-----------|
| le narcisse | narcissus |
|-------------|-----------|

(b) Are irregularly masculine :

|             |         |            |            |
|-------------|---------|------------|------------|
| le diocèse  | diocese | le malaise | uneasiness |
| le carrosse | coach   |            |            |

§ 126. *Masculine Nouns ending in -te,*

(a) From Latin neuters are derived :

|            |               |             |           |
|------------|---------------|-------------|-----------|
| un arbuste | shrub         | le pacte    | agreement |
| le faite   | height        | le précepte | precept   |
| le gîte    | resting-place | le mérite   | merit     |
| un insecte | insect        |             |           |

(b) From Latin masculines are derived :

|          |         |            |         |
|----------|---------|------------|---------|
| un acte  | action  | le geste   | gesture |
| le culte | worship | le site    | site    |
| le faste | pomp    | le tumulte | tumult  |



(c) From Greek masculines or neuters are derived :

|             |           |               |           |
|-------------|-----------|---------------|-----------|
| un antidote | antidote  | un labyrinthe | labyrinth |
| un automate | automatum | un squelette  | skeleton  |

(d) Are also regularly masculine :

|          |      |              |          |
|----------|------|--------------|----------|
| le buste | bust | le contraste | contrast |
|----------|------|--------------|----------|

(e) Are irregular :

|           |         |          |       |
|-----------|---------|----------|-------|
| le conte  | tale    | le doute | doubt |
| le compte | account |          |       |

### § 127. Masculine Nouns ending in -ue.

(a) From Latin or Greek masculines are :

|              |           |             |                |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|----------------|
| le catalogue | catalogue | le dialogue | dialogue, etc. |
| le cirque    | circus    |             |                |

(b) From a Latin neuter is :

|             |       |
|-------------|-------|
| le cantique | psalm |
|-------------|-------|

(c) Are also regularly masculine :

|           |        |           |      |
|-----------|--------|-----------|------|
| le casque | helmet | le risque | risk |
| le masque | mask   |           |      |

(d) Is irregular :

|           |      |
|-----------|------|
| le manque | want |
|-----------|------|

### § 128. Masculine Nouns ending in -ve.

(a) From Latin masculines are :

|           |       |           |       |
|-----------|-------|-----------|-------|
| le fleuve | river | le glaive | sword |
|-----------|-------|-----------|-------|

(b) Is irregular :

|         |       |
|---------|-------|
| le rêve | dream |
|---------|-------|

### § 129. Masculine Nouns ending in -xe.

(a) From Latin masculines are :

|         |        |         |     |
|---------|--------|---------|-----|
| le luxe | luxury | le sexe | sex |
|---------|--------|---------|-----|

(b) From Greek is :

|             |         |
|-------------|---------|
| le paradoxe | paradox |
|-------------|---------|

### § 130. Masculine Nouns ending in -ze :

|            |                    |
|------------|--------------------|
| le trapèze | trapeze, trapezium |
|------------|--------------------|

## § 131. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

1. Almost all adjectives are compared by the help of adverbs.  
(a) In an ascending scale. (b) In a descending scale.
2. The comparative is formed by adding *plus* (more) or *moins* (less) to the positive. The superlative is formed by adding the *definite* article or some other determinative adjective to the comparative.  

|                       |                      |                         |
|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>grand</i> (great), | <i>plus grand</i> ,  | <i>le plus grand</i> .  |
| <i>grand</i>          | <i>moins grand</i> , | <i>le moins grand</i> . |
3. *Petit* (little), *mauvais* (bad), have two forms, one of Latin, one of French origin. (Compare *Adverbs*.)  

|                                         |                         |                           |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Petit</i> {                          | <i>plus petit</i> . . . | <i>le plus petit</i>      |
|                                         | <i>moindre</i> (minor)  | <i>le moindre</i>         |
| <i>Petit</i> , <i>moins petit</i> . . . |                         | <i>le moins petit</i>     |
| <i>Mauvais</i> {                        | <i>plus mauvais</i>     | <i>le plus mauvais</i>    |
|                                         | <i>pire</i> (pejor) .   | <i>le pire</i>            |
| <i>Mauvais</i> , <i>moins mauvais</i> , |                         | <i>le moins mauvais</i> . |
4. *Bon* has only a comparative of Latin origin :  

|                                     |                                     |                       |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>bon</i> ,                        | <i>meilleur</i> ( <i>meliores</i> ) | <i>le meilleur</i>    |
| <i>bon</i> , <i>moins bon</i> . . . |                                     | <i>le moins bon</i> . |

## § 132. NUMERALS.

## Cardinal.

|           |             |                      |
|-----------|-------------|----------------------|
| 1 un, une | 11 onze     | 20 vingt             |
| 2 deux    | 12 douze    | 21 vingt-et-un       |
|           |             | 22 vingt-deux        |
| 3 trois   | 13 treize   | 30 trente            |
| 4 quatre  | 14 quatorze | 40 quarante          |
| 5 cinq    | 15 quinze   | 50 cinquante         |
| 6 six     | 16 seize    | 60 soixante          |
| 7 sept    | 17 dix-sept | 70 soixante-dix      |
|           |             | 71 soixante-et-onze  |
|           |             | 72 soixante-douze    |
| 8 huit    | 18 dix-huit | 80 quatre-vingts     |
|           |             | 81 quatre-vingt-un   |
|           |             | 82 quatre-vingt-deux |

9 neuf

19 dix-neuf

90 quatre-vingt-dix

91 quatre-vingt-onze

92 quatre-vingt-douze

10 dix

100 cent

When not followed by another numeral, *vingt* and *cent* take *s* as a mark of the plural, like ordinary adjectives and substantives—

200 *deux cents*, 201 *deux cent un*.

80 *quatre-vingts*, 81 *quatre-vingt-un*.

*Million* is a substantive, and can always take an *s*: *Deux millions*.

*Mille* (1000) does not take *s* at any time.

For dates after Christ, *mil* is used instead of *mille*: 1875, *mil huit cent soixante-quinze*.

### Ordinal.

§ 133. The ordinal are in form the cardinal with *-ième* added: *trois, trois-ième*. But

(a) *quatre, seize, quarante*, etc., lose *e* final: *quatr-ième, seiz-ième*, etc.

(b) *cinq* adds *u*: *cinqu-ième*.

(c) *neuf* softens *f* into *v*: *neuv-ième*.

(d) *premier* means *first*. *Second* and *deuxième* both mean *second*. But in compound numbers the forms *unième* and *deuxième* alone are used: *vingt et unième, vingt-deuxième*.

### Collective.

§ 134. *une douzaine*, dozen; *une cinquantaine*, about 50

*une quinzaine*, about 15    *une soixantaine*, „ 60

*une vingtaine*, score    *une centaine*, „ 100

*une trentaine*, about 30    *un millier*, „ 1000

*une quarantaine*, „ 40    *des milliers*, thousands

### Fractional.

§ 135.  *demi, demie*, adj., half

*le quart*     $\frac{1}{4}$

*la moitié*     $\frac{1}{2}$

*les trois quarts*     $\frac{3}{4}$

*le tiers*     $\frac{1}{3}$

*le cinquième*     $\frac{1}{5}$

*les deux tiers*     $\frac{2}{3}$

*le sixième*     $\frac{1}{6}$ , etc.

## NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS TO CHAPTER I

## § 136. Adjectives in -eur

The ordinary rule that adjectives in -eur, with an exactly corresponding present participle, have -euse in the feminine is sufficient for practical purposes: *flatteur* (flattant) *flatteuse*; *blanchisseur* (blanchissant) *blanchisseuse*. But a few words interfere with the rule. They are all substantival forms in common use as adjectives:

(a) The words *débiteur*, *exécuteur*, *inventeur*, *inspecteur*, *persécuteur*, have corresponding present participles, but it is not from these present participles that they have been formed, but from the Latin substantives, *debitorem*, *executorem*, *inventorem*, *inspectorem*. Hence in feminine they have *débitrice* from *debitricem*, etc.

(b) Again, *enchanteur*, *pêcheur* (sinner), *vengeur*, *chasseur*, have for feminine *enchanteresse*, *pécheresse*, *vengeresse*, *chasseresse*. They were once only employed as substantives; and -esse, like -trice, is a substantival suffix.

## § 137. Beau, bel, etc.

'Beau before a consonant, bel before a vowel.' (§ 87.) This is only true when there would be real hiatus if *beau* were used. Thus we say, *un bel enfant*, but *il est beau en tout temps*; a pause being possible between *beau* and *en*, the hiatus is only apparent. This is true of *nouvel*, *mol*, *fol*, *vieux*, etc.

## § 138. Grand' mère, grand' mères.

1. Adjectives like *clarus*, *clara*; *altus*, *alta*; *bonus*, *bona*; which in Latin have one form for the masculine, and one for the feminine, had also two forms in Old French.

2. On the contrary, adjectives like *grandis*, *legalis*, which in Latin have only one form for both the masculine and feminine, had in Old French only one word for both genders.

3. In the fifteenth century the two kinds of adjectives were wrongly treated in the same way. To both kinds the letter *e* was added in the feminine. This is the modern rule.

4. The correct etymological feminine survives in the following compounds: *grand' cérémonie*, *grand' chère*, *grand' chose*, *grand' faim*, *grand' soif*, *grand' hâte*, *grand' mère*, *grand' messe*, *grand' peine*, *grand' peur*, *grand' pitié*, *grand' rue*. Till lately, everybody thought that the *e* had dropped out. We still put an apostrophe.

## § 139. S as a mark of the Plural.

In Old French, substantives had still two cases, the remains of the Latin six cases.

(1) The case of the **subject** (*sujet*).

(2) The case of the **object** (*régime*).

There were three declensions, the remains of the Latin five declensions.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

|              | SINGULAR.                              | PLURAL.                                  |
|--------------|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| SUBJECTIVE : | <b>voie</b> ( <i>via</i> )             | <b>voies</b> ( <i>viæ</i> )              |
| OBJECTIVE :  | <b>voie</b> ( <i>viæ, viam, etc.</i> ) | <b>voies</b> ( <i>vias, vias, etc.</i> ) |

## SECOND DECLENSION.

|              | SINGULAR.                                | PLURAL.                                   |
|--------------|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| SUBJECTIVE : | <b>murs</b> ( <i>murus</i> )             | <b>murs</b> ( <i>muri</i> )               |
| OBJECTIVE :  | <b>murs</b> ( <i>murum, muri, etc.</i> ) | <b>murs</b> ( <i>muros, muris, etc.</i> ) |

## THIRD DECLENSION.

|              | SINGULAR.                                  | PLURAL.                                   |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| SUBJECTIVE : | <b>lierre, or lierre</b> ( <i>la'tro</i> ) | <b>larron</b> ( <i>latro'nes</i> ).       |
| OBJECTIVE :  | <b>larron</b> ( <i>latro'nem</i> )         | <b>larrons</b> ( <i>latro'nes, etc.</i> ) |

In course of time the three declensions were mixed up; afterwards the Subjective disappeared, and the Objective, which was more common and often more striking, was employed both as Subjective and Objective; but

(a) In a few instances it is the Objective that has disappeared; the Subjective remains, (1) **fiis** (*filius*), **gueux** (*coquus*), **lacs** (*laqueus*), **lis** (*lilium*), **puits** (*puteus*), **Charles** (*Carolus*), **Louis** (*Ludovicus*), etc.; (2) **sœur** (*soror*), **peintre** (*pictor*), **ancêtre** (*antecessor*), **traître** (*traditor*), **prêtre** (*presbyter*), **pire** (*pejor*).

(b) Sometimes both remain, but with different meanings.

|                                             |                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>fonds</b> ( <i>fundus</i> )              | <b>fond</b> ( <i>fundum</i> )                          |
| <b>on</b> ( <i>homo</i> )                   | <b>homme</b> ( <i>hominem</i> )                        |
| <b>sire</b>                                 | <b>seigneur and sieur</b> ( <i>seniorem</i> )          |
| <b>messire</b> }                            |                                                        |
| <b>pâtre</b> ( <i>pastor</i> )              | <b>pasteur</b> ( <i>pastorem</i> )                     |
| <b>moindre</b> <i>Adj.</i> ( <i>minor</i> ) | <b>mineur</b> <i>Adj. and Sub.</i> ( <i>minorem</i> ). |

Of the five Latin declensions of six cases, and of the intermediate two or three French declensions of two cases, we only have left the 's' of the plural accusative as a mark, no longer of case, but of number:

|                |                  |                   |                    |
|----------------|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| <i>la voie</i> | <i>les voies</i> | <i>l'homme</i>    | <i>les hommes</i>  |
| <i>le mur</i>  | <i>les murs</i>  | <i>le larron</i>  | <i>les larrons</i> |
|                |                  | <i>etc., etc.</i> |                    |

## § 140. Some Irregular Plurals.

The *l* of many Latin words has been changed into '*u*' in its passage into Modern French. This change has been irregular, and in most cases we have from a common root, some forms in *l*, side by side with the forms in *u*.

*Au, à l'; du, de l'; ils, eux; cheveu, chevelure; vieux, vieil; cieux, ciels; cheval, chevaux; résoudre, résolvant, etc., etc.*

In addition to the variations in the particles, substantives, adjectives, verbs, which have been already given, the following irregularities have their origin in the vocalisation or non-vocalisation of *l*.

## A.

*Substantives and Adjectives with Plural in -als.*

The following substantives take *-als*:—

*Bal, carnaval, cérémonial, chacal, festival, régat, etc.*

The greatest difficulty arising from the partial adoption of *u* for *l* occurs in the plural of adjectives in *-al*, of which there are between two or three hundred. Most of these change *al* into *aux*, but the plural of many of the remainder is very doubtful.

The following certainly form their plural in *als*:—

*Amical, banal, fatal, final, frugal, filial, glacial, initial, labial, matinal, médial, naval, pascal, pénal, théâtral.*

## B.

*Substantives with two forms for the plural: -ls, -ux.*

(1) *Âneul; âneuls, and âneux* (L. L. *aviolus*).

The more common form *âneux* is only used in the sense of *ancestors*.

(2) *Ciel, ciels, and cieux* (*cœlum*).

The plural *ciels* is only found in such figurative senses as—

*Les ciels de ces tableaux.* The skies of these pictures.

(3) *Œil, œils, and yeux* (*oculus*).

The plural *yeux* is always employed even in a figurative sense, when there is no danger of a mistake (!) being made between that figurative sense and the literal one:

*Un fromage qui est rempli d'yeux.*

A cheese which is full of holes.

*Dans cette maison il y a beaucoup d'œils-de-bœuf.*

In that house there are many round windows.

(4) *Travail* (work); *travails* and *travaux* (*trabaculum*).

The plural *travails* is only used in the rare senses of (a) Wooden frames, used to prevent horses from kicking whilst they are being shod. This is its literal meaning. (b) Official reports, as *Ce ministre a eu plusieurs travaux cette semaine avec le roi.* (*Acad.*)

### § 141. Class Names of Human Beings.

a. Most substantives which for any reason are not often used except in reference to the male sex, retain the masculine gender and masculine form, when accidentally employed in connection with the female sex. Such are *peintre, auteur, poète, professeur, orateur, sculpteur, architecte, apothicaire, athlète, artiste, apôtre, autocrate, athée, subalterne, soldat, employé*, etc., etc.

β. Most substantives, on assuming the idea of sex, retain the gender of the substantive of like meaning without sex, from which they are derived; thus, from

*la vigie*, look-out (naval)

*la vigie*, look-out man

*la sentinelle*, sentry

*la sentinelle*, sentinel,—etc., etc.

γ. Some change the gender; thus we have from

*une enseigne*, ensign

*un enseigne*, ensign

*la trompette*, trumpet

*le trompette*, trumpeter

*la garde*, watch

*le garde*, watchman,—etc., etc.

### § 141a. Class Names of Animals.

a. A large number of quadrupeds and birds (mostly those not domesticated), of fishes, reptiles, and insects, have only a class name. Such nouns, with but few exceptions, consistently follow, like names of inanimate objects, the rule of *e* mute (§ 96):

#### MASCULINE.

*un éléphant*, elephant

*un rossignol*, nightingale

*un serpent*, serpent

*un maquereau*, mackerel

*un papillon*, butterfly

etc., etc.

#### FEMININE.

*une panthère*, panther

*une bécasse*, wood-cock

*une vipère*, viper

*une morue*, cod-fish

*une guêpe*, wasp

etc., etc.

The following are exceptions:

a. *le buffle*, buffalo

*le cygne*, swan

*le crocodile*, crocodile

*le cancre*, } crab

*le crabe*, }

*le congre*, conger-eel

*l'hippopotame*, hippopotamus

*le merle*, blackbird

*le polype*, } polypus, octo-

*le poulpe*, } pus

*le renne*, reindeer

b. *la fourmi*, ant

*la perdrix*, partridge

*la souris*, mouse

### § 142. Substantives of Double Gender (§ 99).

The distinctions of gender in these substantives have nothing to do with sex, like those in § 94.

They arise from a difference of derivation; from a struggle between the Latin ending and the French ending; from the influence of some word understood, etc. In some cases it seems impossible to point out any reason.

The distinctions of gender have been utilized with more or less success to obtain *distinctions of meaning*. Or perhaps more often the double gender has followed the double meaning.

## § 142A. Gender of Compound Substantives.

Before the gender of a compound word can be ascertained, the word must be analysed :

a. If the leading idea is found in a noun, that noun determines the gender of the compound word :

*a secret thought, une arrière pensée* (i.e., *une pensée en arrière*).

*an after-taste, un arrière goût* (i.e., *un goût en arrière*).

b. Otherwise the gender is masculine :

*a tomahawk, un casse-tête.*

*a portfolio, un porte-feuille* : (see § 92 for examples)

## § 143. Gender of Proper Names.

Proper names are more or less subject to the rule of the *e mute*. But the following additional observations may be useful :

1. Proper names of males are masculine : proper names of females are feminine. There is no real exception to this rule.

2. *La St. Michel, la St. Jean, etc.*, = *la fête de St. Michel, la fête de St. Jean, etc.* Compare *la mi-août, la mi-carême*. In *le carême, jour or dies* may be understood.

3. Names of **Mountains** follow mainly the Latin rule :

(a) When employed in the singular, they are masculine : *Le Caucase, le Vésuve, le Jura.*

(b) When employed in the plural, they are feminine : *Les Alpes, les Pyrénées, les Andes, les Vosges.*

The word *mont* may be understood in the singular, the word *chaîne* in the plural.

4. Names of **Rivers** follow the rule of *e mute*, but bear remains of the Latin, where the masculine was usual, *fluvius* being understood. Hence the following masculines in *e mute* :

|                   |           |                      |            |
|-------------------|-----------|----------------------|------------|
| <i>le Rhône</i>   | Rhone     | <i>le Tibre</i>      | Tiber      |
| <i>le Danube</i>  | Danube    | <i>le Borysthène</i> | Borythenes |
| <i>le Tage</i>    | Tagus     | <i>l'Ebre</i>        | Ebro       |
| <i>le Tigre</i>   | Tigris    | <i>le Gange</i>      | Ganges     |
| <i>l'Euphrate</i> | Euphrates |                      |            |

5. Names of **Countries, Provinces**, follow the rule of *e mute*,

Exceptions :

|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| <i>le Bengale</i>    | <i>le Maine</i>     |
| <i>le Mexique</i>    | <i>le Hanovre</i>   |
| <i>le Péloponèse</i> | <i>le Finistère</i> |

6. Names of **Towns** are usually masculine, but sometimes *la ville* is understood, and the feminine is employed.

## § 144. Cardinals.

1. In Old French *vingt* = *score* is freely used :

2. The form *six vingt* (120) remained till the 17th century, and was in common use by Racine, La Bruyère, Bossuet, etc. It is now obsolete.

3. The simpler forms : *septante* (70), *octante* (80), *nonante* (90), are only now used in the South of France, Switzerland and Belgium.



## CHAPTER II.—PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are either—

*Adjectival*: determining a substantive.

*Substantival*: standing instead of a substantive.

Pronouns are of six kinds:

(a) *Personal, Relative, Interrogative, Indefinite*: mostly substantival.

(b) *Possessive, Demonstrative*: partly substantival, partly adjectival.

Most Personal, Relative, and Interrogative Pronouns have special forms for gender, number, and case.

The Possessive and Demonstrative Pronouns have special forms for gender and number, but not for case.

Some Indefinite Pronouns have special forms for gender and number, but not for case. Some have neither gender, number, nor case forms.

## Personal Pronouns.

§ 145. The Personal Pronouns are all substantival. They may be conveniently divided into—

(i) **CONJUNCTIVE**: closely joined to a verb.\*

*Je parle au garçon*, I speak to the waiter.

*Le guide le voit et lui parle*, The guide sees him and speaks to him.

(ii) **DISJUNCTIVE**: not closely joined to a verb.\*

*Qui est là? Moi.* Who is there? *I.*

*Allez sans moi.* Go without *me.*

*Il est meilleur que moi.* He is better than *I.*

§ 146. **CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS** (ordinary).

1st Person.

|            |    |          |         |           |
|------------|----|----------|---------|-----------|
| SUBJECTIVE | je | <i>I</i> | nous    | <i>we</i> |
|            | {  | me       | me      | nous      |
| OBJECTIVE  | {  | † of me  | † of us |           |
|            | {  | me       | to me   | nous      |
|            |    |          | to us   |           |

\* See *Syntax*.

† See note next page.

## 2nd Person.

|            |    |      |           |      |          |
|------------|----|------|-----------|------|----------|
| SUBJECTIVE | tu | thou | vous      | you  |          |
| OBJECTIVE  | {  | te   | thee      | vous | you      |
|            |    |      | * of thee |      | * of you |
|            |    | te   | to thee   | vous | to you   |

## 3rd Person (Masculine).

|            |    |        |               |      |         |
|------------|----|--------|---------------|------|---------|
| SUBJECTIVE | il | he, it | ils           | they |         |
| OBJECTIVE  | {  | le     | him, it       | les  | them    |
|            |    | en     | of him, of it | en   | of them |
|            |    | lui    | to him, to it | leur | to them |

## 3rd Person (Feminine).

|            |               |       |               |      |         |
|------------|---------------|-------|---------------|------|---------|
| SUBJECTIVE | elle, she, it | elles | they          |      |         |
| OBJECTIVE  | {             | la    | her, it       | les  | them    |
|            |               | en    | of her, of it | en   | of them |
|            |               | lui   | to her, to it | leur | to them |

## § 147. CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS (reflexive).

*Me, te, nous, vous*, are also used as reflexive pronouns of the Accusative and Dative cases : the Nominative and Genitive are wanting. For the third person there is a special form, *se*.

## 1st Person.

|            |          |                     |                          |
|------------|----------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| SUBJECTIVE | wanting. |                     |                          |
| OBJECTIVE  | {        | me <i>myself</i>    | nous <i>ourselves</i>    |
|            |          | *of <i>myself</i>   | *of <i>ourselves</i>     |
|            |          | me <i>to myself</i> | nous <i>to ourselves</i> |

## 2nd Person.

|            |          |             |                                                 |
|------------|----------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| SUBJECTIVE | wanting. |             |                                                 |
| OBJECTIVE  | {        | te          | thyself      VOUS    yourself or yourselves     |
|            |          | *of thyself | *of yourself or yourselves                      |
|            |          | te          | to thyself    VOUS    to yourself or yourselves |

## 3rd Person.

|            |          |                  |                   |               |                |
|------------|----------|------------------|-------------------|---------------|----------------|
| SUBJECTIVE | wanting. | and person.      |                   |               |                |
| OBJECTIVE  | {        | so               | oneself           | so            | themselves     |
|            |          |                  | himself           |               |                |
|            |          |                  | herself           |               |                |
|            |          |                  | itself            |               |                |
|            |          |                  | *of oneself, etc. |               | *of themselves |
|            | so       | to oneself, etc. | so                | to themselves |                |

\* *En*, in reality an adverb (Lat. *inde*), is commonly employed as a genitive of the third person : *Il en parle, he speaks of it*. The genitive of the first and second person is wanting. *Y*, also an adverb (Lat. *ibi*), is employed as a dative of the third person ; *Il y va souvent, he goes there often, or he goes to it often*. *En* and *y* are seldom applied to persons.

## § 148. DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

## 1st Person.

|            |          |              |         |              |
|------------|----------|--------------|---------|--------------|
| SUBJECTIVE | moi      | <i>I</i>     | nous    | <i>we</i>    |
| OBJECTIVE  | { moi    | <i>me</i>    | nous    | <i>us</i>    |
|            | { de moi | <i>of me</i> | de nous | <i>of us</i> |
|            | { à moi  | <i>to me</i> | à nous  | <i>to us</i> |

## 2nd Person.

|            |          |                |         |               |
|------------|----------|----------------|---------|---------------|
| SUBJECTIVE | toi      | <i>thou</i>    | vous    | <i>you</i>    |
| OBJECTIVE  | { toi    | <i>thee</i>    | vous    | <i>you</i>    |
|            | { de toi | <i>of thee</i> | de vous | <i>of you</i> |
|            | { à toi  | <i>to thee</i> | à vous  | <i>to you</i> |

## 3rd Person (Masculine).

|            |          |                      |       |                |
|------------|----------|----------------------|-------|----------------|
| SUBJECTIVE | lui      | <i>he, it</i>        | eux   | <i>they</i>    |
| OBJECTIVE  | { lui    | <i>him, it</i>       | eux   | <i>them</i>    |
|            | { de lui | <i>of him, of it</i> | d'eux | <i>of them</i> |
|            | { à lui  | <i>to him, to it</i> | à eux | <i>to them</i> |

## 3rd Person (Feminine).

|            |          |                      |         |                |
|------------|----------|----------------------|---------|----------------|
| SUBJECTIVE | elle     | <i>she, it</i>       | elles   | <i>they</i>    |
| OBJECTIVE  | { elle   | <i>her, it</i>       | elles   | <i>them</i>    |
|            | { d'elle | <i>of her, of it</i> | d'elles | <i>of them</i> |
|            | { à elle | <i>to her, to it</i> | à elles | <i>to them</i> |

1. The Disjunctive Personal Pronouns are sometimes made more emphatic by the addition of the adjective *même* (*-self*), as :

|            |                                  |
|------------|----------------------------------|
| moi-même   | <i>myself ; I myself</i>         |
| nous-mêmes | <i>ourselves ; we ourselves.</i> |

This form is called the "*Definitive*," and must not be confused with the "*Reflexive*."

|                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| Je me vois          | <i>I see myself</i>    |
| Je le vois moi-même | <i>I see it myself</i> |

*Soi* without *même* means *oneself, himself, herself, itself, or themselves* ; but it is more emphatic when *même* is added.

### Possessive Pronouns.

§ 149. The Possessive Pronouns are divided into—

ADJECTIVE, determining a noun expressed :

*Mon chapeau.*

*My hat.*

SUBSTANTIVE, determining a noun understood, and standing instead of that noun.\*

*Ce chapeau est le mien.*

*That hat is mine.*

### § 150. ADJECTIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

#### Singular.

#### Plural.

| M.    | F.    | M.    | F.    |              |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------------|
| mon   | ma    | mes   | mes   | <i>my</i>    |
| ton   | ta    | tes   | tes   | <i>thy</i>   |
| son   | sa    | ses   | ses   | <i>his</i>   |
| notre | notre | nous  | nous  | <i>our</i>   |
| votre | votre | vous  | vous  | <i>your</i>  |
| leur  | leur† | leurs | leurs | <i>their</i> |

To prevent 'hiatus,' use *mon, ton, son* instead of *ma, ta, sa*, when the next word begins with a vowel or unaspirated *h*: *mon orange est bonne*, my orange is good; *son histoire est longue*, his story is long.

### § 151. SUBSTANTIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

#### Singular.

#### Plural.

| M.       | F.        | M.         | F.          |                       |
|----------|-----------|------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| le mien  | la mienne | les miens  | les miennes | <i>mine</i>           |
| le tien  | la tienne | les tiens  | les tiennes | <i>thine</i>          |
| le sien  | la sienne | les siens  | les siennes | <i>his, hers, its</i> |
| le nôtre | la nôtre  | les nôtres | les nôtres  | <i>ours</i>           |
| le vôtre | la vôtre  | les vôtres | les vôtres  | <i>yours</i>          |
| le leur  | la leur†  | les leurs  | les leurs   | <i>theirs</i>         |

\* Hence the use of the Article.

† Notice that *leur* has no special feminine form.

### Demonstrative Pronouns.

§ 152. The Demonstrative Pronouns are divided into—

(1) ADJECTIVE, determining a noun expressed :

*Ce portemanteau*, this or that portmanteau.

(2) SUBSTANTIVE, determining a noun understood, and standing instead of that noun :

*J'ai votre portemanteau, où est celui de votre père ?*

I have your portmanteau, where is your father's ?

### § 153. ADJECTIVE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

| M.  | F. |       | M.  | F.  |               |
|-----|----|-------|-----|-----|---------------|
| cet | }  | cette | ces | ces | these, those. |
| ce  |    |       |     |     |               |

To prevent 'hiatus,' use *cet* instead of *ce*, when the next word begins with a vowel or unaspirated *h*: *cet omnibus*, *cet homme*.

### § 154. SUBSTANTIVE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

| M.    | F.    |            | M.   | F.     |               |
|-------|-------|------------|------|--------|---------------|
| celui | celle | this, that | ceux | celles | these, those. |

OBSERVATIONS.—The adverbs *ci* (*ici*, here) and *là* (there) are added to the Demonstrative Pronouns to render them more definite, if necessary.

(a) In the adjective form they are joined to a noun :

*Ce portemanteau-ci*. This portmanteau (here, near me).

*Ce portemanteau-là*. That portmanteau (there, yonder).

(b) In the substantive form they are joined to the Pronoun itself :

*Celui-ci* this (here, near me).

*Celui-là* that (there, yonder).

*Ce* has also substantival use: *C'est la vérité*, it is the truth. *Ce sont les portemanteaux*. This *ce* strengthened becomes *ceci* (this), *cela* (that). *Ceci est à moi, cela est à vous*—This is mine, that is yours.

**Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.**

§ 155. The Relative and Interrogative Pronouns have almost the same origin and the same forms. They are (*quel* excepted) entirely substantival.

**§ 156. ADJECTIVE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.**

|            |         |           |          |                                                |
|------------|---------|-----------|----------|------------------------------------------------|
| SUBJECTIVE | quel    | quelle    | quels    | quelles—<br><i>which or what.</i>              |
| OBJECTIVE  | quel    | quelle    | quels    | quelles—<br><i>which or what</i>               |
|            | de quel | de quelle | de quels | de quelles—<br><i>of or from which or what</i> |
|            | à quel  | à quelle  | à quels  | à quelles—<br><i>to which or what.</i>         |
|            |         |           |          |                                                |

*Examples.*

|            |                                                      |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| SUBJECTIVE | Je ne sais <i>quel</i> livre est sur la table.       |
| OBJECTIVE  | Je ne sais <i>quel</i> livre il a reçu.              |
|            | Je ne sais <i>avec quel</i> livre il s'amuse.        |
|            | Je ne sais <i>de quel</i> livre vous parlez.         |
|            | Je ne sais <i>à quel</i> livre il a ajouté une page. |

**§ 157. SUBSTANTIVE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.**

a. **Qui, who** (persons).

|            |                 |                        |
|------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| SUBJECTIVE | qui             | <i>who</i>             |
| OBJECTIVE  | que             | before verbs           |
|            | qui             | after preposition      |
|            | de qui or dont* | <i>of or from whom</i> |
|            | à qui           | <i>to whom.</i>        |

*Examples.*

|            |                                           |
|------------|-------------------------------------------|
| SUBJECTIVE | L'homme <i>qui</i> est là.                |
| OBJECTIVE  | L'homme <i>que</i> vous voyez là.         |
|            | L'homme <i>avec qui</i> vous avez voyagé. |
|            | L'homme <i>de qui</i> vous parlez, or     |
|            | L'homme <i>dont</i> vous parlez.          |
|            | L'homme <i>à qui</i> vous parlez.         |

\* *Dont* is derived from *de* and *unde* (*whence*). Compare *en* and *y*.

**β. Qui, which** (animals or things).

*Qui* (which) is defective. The parts that are wanting are supplied by *lequel*, the substantival form of *quel*.\*

|            |                                          |                         |
|------------|------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| SUBJECTIVE | <i>qui</i>                               | <i>which</i>            |
| OBJECTIVE  | <i>que</i> (before verb)                 | <i>which</i>            |
|            | <i>lequel</i> , etc. (after preposition) |                         |
|            | <i>duquel</i> , etc., or <i>dont</i>     | <i>of or from which</i> |
|            | <i>auquel</i> etc.                       | <i>to which</i> .       |

*Examples.*

|            |                                                       |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| SUBJECTIVE | Le livre <i>qui</i> est là                            |
| OBJECTIVE  | Le livre <i>que</i> vous avez là.                     |
|            | Le livre <i>avec lequel</i> vous vous amusez.         |
|            | Le livre <i>duquel</i> (or <i>dont</i> ) vous parlez. |
|            | Le livre <i>auquel</i> il a ajouté une page.          |

**γ. What = that which.**

|            |                                                   |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| SUBJECTIVE | Faites <i>ce qui</i> est jus                      |
| OBJECTIVE  | Faites <i>ce que</i> je vous ordonne.             |
|            | Je ne sais <i>avec quoi</i> vous avez fait cela.† |
|            | Je ne sais <i>de quoi</i> vous vous tourmentez.   |
|            | Je ne sais <i>à quoi</i> vous pensez. (§ 159 γ.)  |

## § 158. ADJECTIVE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

**Quel? which? what?**

|       |                 |                   |                  |                    |
|-------|-----------------|-------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| SUBJ. | <i>quel?</i>    | <i>quelle?</i>    | <i>quels?</i>    | <i>quelles?</i>    |
| OBJ.  | <i>quel?</i>    | <i>quelle?</i>    | <i>quels?</i>    | <i>quelles?</i>    |
|       | <i>de quel?</i> | <i>de quelle?</i> | <i>de quels?</i> | <i>de quelles?</i> |
|       | <i>à quel?</i>  | <i>à quelle?</i>  | <i>à quels?</i>  | <i>à quelles?</i>  |

*Examples.*

|       |                                      |
|-------|--------------------------------------|
| SUBJ. | Quel livre est sur la table?         |
| OBJ.  | Quel livre a-t-il?                   |
|       | Avec quel livre s'amuse-t-il?        |
|       | De quel livre parlez-vous?           |
|       | A quel livre a-t-il ajouté une page? |

\* Compare *votre*, *le vôtre*, *notre*, *le nôtre*, etc. *Lequel* (from *quel*) may also be employed instead of the existing parts of *qui*, *which*.

† *Quoi*, *what*, in *je ne sais quoi*, I know not what, is an Indefinite Pronoun.

## § 159. SUBSTANTIVE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

## α. Qui? who? (persons).

|            |           |                  |
|------------|-----------|------------------|
| SUBJECTIVE | qui?      | who?             |
| OBJECTIVE  | { qui?    | whom?            |
|            | { de qui? | of or from whom? |
|            | { à qui?  | to whom?         |

*Examples.*

|            |                              |
|------------|------------------------------|
| SUBJECTIVE | Qui est là?                  |
| OBJECTIVE  | { Qui voyez-vous là?         |
|            | { Avec qui avez-vous voyagé? |
|            | { De qui parlez-vous?        |
|            | { À qui parlez-vous?         |

## β. Lequel? which? (animals and things).

|       |                                                        |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| SUBJ. | lequel? laquelle? lesquels? lesquelles? which?         |
| OBJ.  | { lequel? laquelle? lesquels? lesquelles? which?       |
|       | { duquel? de laquelle? desquels? desquelles? of which? |
|       | { auquel? à laquelle? auxquels? auxquelles? to which?  |

*Examples.*

|            |                                  |
|------------|----------------------------------|
| SUBJECTIVE | Lequel est sur la table?         |
| OBJECTIVE  | { Lequel voulez-vous?            |
|            | { Avec lequel vous amusez-vous?  |
|            | { Duquel parlez-vous?            |
|            | { Auquel a-t-il ajouté une page? |

## γ. Que? quoi? what?

1. *Que?* what? is employed before a verb like the Conjunctive Personal Pronoun (§ 166). *Que* voulez-vous? What do you want?

2. *Quoi?* what? is employed, like the Disjunctive Personal Pronouns, after a preposition or by itself.

*Avec quoi* voulez-vous le faire?  
 With what do you wish to do it?  
*Quoi?* *que* dites-vous?  
 What? what do you say?

---

\* *Dont* is never interrogative in Modern French.



## Indefinite Pronouns.

§ 160. The Indefinite Pronouns are divided into—  
*Adjective*, joined to a noun : *Chaque homme était à son poste.*  
*Substantive*, never joined to a noun : *Chacun était à son poste.*

## § 161. ADJECTIVE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

## a. Without flexion.

|        |             |
|--------|-------------|
| chaque | <i>each</i> |
|--------|-------------|

## β. With flexion.

|            |                    |
|------------|--------------------|
| aucun      | <i>any</i>         |
| autre      | <i>other</i>       |
| même       | <i>same</i>        |
| nul        | <i>no</i>          |
| quelque    | <i>some</i>        |
| quelconque | <i>of any kind</i> |
| tel        | <i>such</i>        |
| tout       | <i>all.</i>        |

## § 162. SUBSTANTIVE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

## a. Without flexion.

|            |                                |
|------------|--------------------------------|
| autrui     | <i>others</i>                  |
| on, l'on   | <i>one, people, they, etc.</i> |
| personne * | <i>anybody</i>                 |
| quiconque  | <i>whoever.</i>                |

## β. With flexion.

|                          |             |                       |
|--------------------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| aucun *                  | }           | <i>any</i>            |
| aucune                   |             |                       |
| un autre                 | }           | <i>another</i>        |
| une autre                |             |                       |
| chacun                   | }           | <i>every one</i>      |
| chacune                  |             |                       |
| l'un, l'autre            | }           | <i>one another</i>    |
| l'une, l'autre           |             |                       |
| les uns, les autres      |             |                       |
| les unes, les autres     |             |                       |
| l'un et l'autre, etc.    |             |                       |
| l'un ou l'autre, etc.    | <i>both</i> |                       |
| ni l'un ni l'autre, etc. |             |                       |
| quelqu'un                | }           | <i>either</i>         |
| quelqu'une               |             |                       |
| quelques-uns             |             |                       |
| quelques-unes            |             |                       |
| quelques-unes            |             |                       |
|                          | }           | <i>neither</i>        |
|                          |             |                       |
|                          | }           | <i>some, somebody</i> |
|                          |             |                       |
|                          |             |                       |
|                          |             |                       |
|                          |             |                       |

\* With *ne* expressed or understood, *personne* = *nobody*, *aucun* = *no, none*.

## NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS TO CHAPTER II.

§ 163. It is to the necessity of having a word of sufficient strength to bear the tonic accent that we owe such imperative phrases : *Menez-moi, lave-toi*, etc. (See SYNTAX.)

As far as modern practice is concerned, they stand out as solitary instances of the use of *moi, toi*, in connection with the verb. With perfect consistency, when *en* is present, *moi, toi* vanish, and *me, te* are restored : *va-t'en ; donnez-m'en*. Also if the pronoun is restored to its ordinary position, *me, te* reappear : *ne me menez pas ; ne te lave pas ; approche-toi et te mets à ma place*.

§ 164. *Mon, ton, son*, before a feminine Substantive.

1. The strange combination of a masculine attributive form with a feminine noun first arose in the 14th century. Till then the hiatus was either maintained or was avoided in the same way as in the article.

*La renommée de cil saint home ala tant qu'ele vint a l'apostele Innocent, et l'apostles li manda qu'il sermonnast de la croix par s'auctorite.* (VILLEHARDOUIN, 13th cent.)

2. *M'amie*, now spelt *ma mie*, only remains of the better forms.

Si le roi m'avait donné  
Paris sa grand' ville,  
Et qu'il m'eût fallu quitter  
L'amour de *ma mie*,  
Je dirais au roi Henri  
Reprenez votre Paris  
J'aime mieux *ma mie*

O gué

J'aime mieux *ma mie*.

(MOLIÈRE.)

*Ma mie*, o vous que j'adore, mais que vous plaignez toujours.

(BÉRANGER.)

§ 165. Why '*leur*,' and not '*leure*,' in feminine.

*Leurs yeux étaient enflammés et leurs bouches étaient fumantes.*  
(FÉNELON, 17th cent.)

It will be seen by the above example that *leur* agrees in number with the noun, but not in gender. The reason is this :

*Leur* is derived from *illorum*. In the absence of agreement the influence of the Latin idiom (*illorum oculi*) still shows itself. Till the 15th century, *leur* correctly agrees neither in gender nor in number.

Toutes *leur* aventures.

(Berte, 13th cent.)

In the 15th and 16th centuries some authors write *leurs*; some *leur*.

Les princes en *leurs* jeunesses. (COMMINES, 15th cent.)

Le peuple donnant de bon cœur la dîme de *leur* fruits et le quint de *leur* butins. (D'AUBIGNÉ, 16th cent.)

### § 166. *Que* (what) and *Quoi* (what) compared.

*Que* (quod) and *quoi* (quid) are now practically the same words, but with this difference, that *que* is always proclitic, whereas *quoi* has the tonic accent. Hence their various uses correspond to those of *me*, *moi*, etc. (§ 163 and Syntax.)

Compare C'est en *quoi* vous vous trompez, and  
C'est en *moi* que vous avez confiance  
*Que* dites-vous ? and  
*Me* dites-vous la vérité ?  
*Quoi* ? *que* dis-tu ? and  
*Toi*, *me* parles-tu ? etc.

### § 167. *Autre*, *autrui*.

*Autre* is from *alter*, *autrui* from *alterius*. Compare *lui* and *celui*. In Old French it is therefore employed as an objective with a preposition or without. This remains; *autrui* cannot be used as subject.

### § 168. *Chaque* and *chacun*.

*Chaque* is essentially adjectival: *Chaque homme*.

*Chacun* is substantival: "*Chacun se disputait la gloire de l'abattre*" (RACINE). "*Chacune avait sa brigue*" (ID.). Formerly *chacun* was employed also as an adjective: "*chacune sœur*" (LA FONTAINE). *Chacun* does not admit of a plural.

### § 169. *Quelque* (some) *quelques*.

*Quelque* is a compound of *quel* (qualis) and *que*.

As *que* is incapable of plural, it would be supposed that in its compound forms it would be equally without *s*, and that the distinction of gender and number would fall upon *quel*. This, in fact, was done till about the end of the 13th century, when the word was first written as now, *quelque*, *quelques*, in the sense of *some*: thus—

Ou par *quieuxque* malaventures. (La Rose, 13th cent.)

But: *Quelques* trois jours apres. (COMMINES, 15th cent.)

§ 170. (1) **Quelque** (2) **Quel . . que, Quelle . . que,**  
(3) **Quelque . . que.**

It does not seem necessary to give a long explanation of these words. A careful study of the construction will make them easy to an English reader.

1. *Quelque* is an indefinite adjective = *some*: *quelques hommes*.

2. *Quel . . que* is an indefinite adjective (= *of what kind*) + a conjunction (= *that*) in: *quel que soit votre plaisir*; *quels que soient les enfants*.

3. In *quelque . . . que*, the word *quelque* is now usually treated as an adverb = *however*. *Quelque bonnes que soient vos raisons*. But occasionally it is treated as an adjective = *whatever*: *Quelques bonnes raisons qu'il ait données*.

Formerly these distinctions did not exist; *quelque* was always capable of *s*: *Quelques trois jours après*. About three days after. *Quelques ardents qu'ils soient*. However earnest they may be.

§ 171. **Quelconque.**

*Quelconque* is from *qualiscunque*, *what kind soever*.

It never agrees in gender; *un homme quelconque, une femme quelconque, des hommes quelconques, des femmes quelconques* (§ 138).

§ 172. **On and l'on.**

*Homo* has given *on*; *hominem*, *homme*.\*

*Hom, homs, hon, om, on*, are all found in Old French, with or without the preceding article *l'*.

This article is now employed for the sake of euphony:

*Je ne dirais pas qu'on conduise, mais que l'on conduise.*

VAUGELAS.

No rule is followed; *on* and *l'on* are both found (and that too in the same authors); with a preference for *l'on* in all cases of doubtful euphony.

---

\* See Substantives, origin of *s* (§ 139).

## CHAPTER III.—VERBS.

§ 173. *INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.*

Verbs have Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, Person.

There are two voices

(1) Active.\*

(2) Passive.

Active verbs are—

Transitive.

Intransitive.

Transitive verbs include—

Ordinary transitive verbs.

Reflexive verbs.

Reciprocal verbs.

Intransitive verbs include—

Ordinary intransitive verbs.

Impersonal verbs.

Passive verbs are only of one kind, for they can only be formed from transitive verbs.

Each voice has two parts, Finite and Infinite.

i. The Verb Finite has four moods :

1. Indicative.

2. Subjunctive.

3. Conditional.

4. Imperative.

ii. The Verb Infinite consists of the

1. Infinitive mood, or verbal noun.

2. Participles, or verbal adjectives.

---

\* In many French Grammars '*Active*' = '*Transitive*.' This is contrary to English practice, and is misleading.

## CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS.

### § 174. CONJUGATION.

Independently of their uses as Transitive, Intransitive, Reflexive, etc., verbs are classified according to certain points of resemblance in their forms. This is called the Conjugation of Verbs. French Verbs are usually divided into four classes according to the ending of the Present Infinitive, Active.

1st, ER; 2nd, IR; 3rd, OIR; 4th, RE.

Verbs are also divided into *Strong* and *Weak*. Any form of a verb which has the tonic accent\* on the stem is said to be "strong;" any form which has the tonic accent on the ending is said to be "weak." A verb which has a strong Simple Past Indicative is said to be a **STRONG VERB**: *je tins*. A verb which has a weak Simple Past Indicative is said to be a **WEAK VERB**. All strong verbs are old. Many verbs which were formerly strong are now weak. Every new verb is weak. The customary classification into four conjugations is easier for the beginner; but the verbs once learnt by their means, it is good to study the *strong* and *weak* classification.

### § 175. REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS (*so called*).

It is usual to speak of verbs as "regular" and "irregular," certain verbs being taken as models of "regularity."

The model verbs are not in reality more regular than many of the so-called "irregular" verbs.

**-er** There may be several thousand verbs in the 1st conjugation; nearly all are conjugated like **PORTER**.

**-ir** There may be several hundred verbs in the 2nd conjugation; the greater number are conjugated like **FINIR**; a smaller number like **SENTIR**.

**-oir** There may be sixty or seventy verbs in the 3rd conjugation. No model verb can be given which will include more than six or seven verbs.

**-re** There may be several hundred verbs in the fourth conjugation; most of these are conjugated like **VENDRE**; many like **PEINDRE**; many like **CONDUIRE**; and many like **PARAÎTRE**.

---

\* § 14.

## AUXILIARY VERBS.

§ 176. Auxiliary Verbs are of two kinds :

1. *Auxiliaries of Tense* (time).
2. *Auxiliaries of Mood\** (manner).

The *Auxiliaries of Tense* are **Avoir** and **Être**. These, with the Past Participle, form the 'compound' or 'combinate' tenses.

In spite of their real irregularity, it is necessary to learn *avoir* and *être* first. Without the help of one or the other of these verbs, but few tenses in any verb can be formed. They are given a second time among the irregular verbs.

The *Auxiliaries of Mood* are—

*Pouvoir* (to be able) = *may, might, can, could.*

*Devoir* (to owe) = *ought, should, have to.*

*Falloir* (to be-necessary) = *must, shall.*

*Vouloir* (to wish) = *will, would.*

These are joined to the Present Infinitive, and not to the Past Participle.

The *Auxiliaries of Mood* are only given among the irregular verbs. It is well to give them early and special attention.

## TENSES.

§ 177. Tense is another word for time. Time can only be Present, Past, or Future. But besides *the time* there are three principal ways in which an action or state may be spoken of :

1. It may be spoken of in the simplest and most indefinite way (SIMPLE).

*I write.*

*I wrote.*

*I shall write.*

\* The term '*Auxiliary of Mood*' has been adopted here from the German Grammars : it is short and convenient. Of course the number of such auxiliaries of mood might be increased ; but this is true of the auxiliaries of tense : for example, *venir* in *je viens de lui parler*, *I have just spoken to him*, is an auxiliary of tense, and *avoir* in *j'ai à lui parler*, is an auxiliary of mood.

2. It may be spoken of as unfinished (IMPERFECT).

*I am writing. I was writing. I shall be writing.*

3. It may be spoken of as finished (PERFECT).

*I have written. I had written. I shall have written.*

Hence there ought to be nine tense forms :

|    |   |                    |                              |
|----|---|--------------------|------------------------------|
| a. | { | Simple Present.    | <i>I write.</i>              |
|    |   | Imperfect Present. | <i>I am writing.</i>         |
|    |   | Perfect Present.   | <i>I have written.</i>       |
| b. | { | Simple Past.       | <i>I wrote.</i>              |
|    |   | Imperfect Past.    | <i>I was writing.</i>        |
|    |   | Perfect Past.      | <i>I had written.</i>        |
| c. | { | Simple Future.     | <i>I shall write.</i>        |
|    |   | Imperfect Future.  | <i>I shall be writing.</i>   |
|    |   | Perfect Future.    | <i>I shall have written.</i> |

Or they can be arranged thus :

|    |   |                    |                              |
|----|---|--------------------|------------------------------|
| a. | { | Simple Present.    | <i>I write.</i>              |
|    |   | Simple Past.       | <i>I wrote.</i>              |
|    |   | Simple Future.     | <i>I shall write.</i>        |
| b. | { | Imperfect Present. | <i>I am writing.</i>         |
|    |   | Imperfect Past.    | <i>I was writing.</i>        |
|    |   | Imperfect Future.  | <i>I shall be writing.</i>   |
| c. | { | Perfect Present.   | <i>I have written.</i>       |
|    |   | Perfect Past.      | <i>I had written.</i>        |
|    |   | Perfect Future.    | <i>I shall have written.</i> |

There is no special tense-form in French for the Imperfect Present, nor for the Imperfect Future, as there is in English. The Simple forms may be used instead.

For the Future Imperfect the periphrastic form, *être à*, is better than the Simple Future, ex.: *je serai à écrire*, *I shall be writing*. To this the Imperfect Present, *je suis à écrire*, *I am writing*, and the Imperfect Past, *j'étais à écrire*, *I was writing*, correspond ; but for most purposes the simple forms, *j'écris*, *j'écrivais*, are sufficient.



**FORMATION OF TENSES.**

§ 178. A French verb has three stems :

The **Present** stem.

The **Past Simple** stem.

The **Past Participle** stem.

These tenses have the **Present** stem : the

(a) Present Simple Indicative, Present Simple Subjunctive, Present Imperative, Present Infinitive, Present Participle.

(b) Past Imperfect, Indicative.

(c) Future Simple Indicative, Present Conditional.

These have the **Past Simple** stem :

Past Simple Indicative, Past Simple Subjunctive.

These have the **Past Participle** stem :

All compound tenses.

These three stems may usually be seen in—

**Infinitive Present,**

**Indicative Past Simple,**

**Past Participle,**

and most French verbs are sufficiently described if these three parts are mentioned. But it is useful, in conjugating, to mention also two other parts, which often possess the same stem as the Infinitive Present in an altered form. Sometimes they show the real Present stem better than the Infinitive does. They are the

**Indicative Present,** 1st person singular.

**Present Participle.**

§ 179. These five parts form altogether what are known as the "**Principal Parts.**"\* From them the other parts of the verb may usually be obtained.

---

\* That is : the parts which in conjugating are of principal importance. The term "*Primitive tenses*" is misleading.

- I. From the *Present Infinitive* is really derived the  
*Simple Future Indicative.*  
*Present Conditional.*
- II. From the *Present Participle* may be formed the  
*Simple Present Indicative* (plural).  
*Imperfect Past Indicative.*  
*Simple Present Subjunctive.*
- III. From the *Simple Present Indicative* may be formed the  
*Present Imperative.*
- IV. From the *Past Simple Indicative* may be formed the  
*Simple Past Subjunctive.*
- V. From the *Past Participle* may be formed  
All compound tenses.

§ 180. The same rules may be thus stated at greater length :

- I. The *Present Infinitive*  
+ *ai*, etc. = Simple Future Indicative.  
+ *ais*, etc. = Present Conditional.
- II. The *Present Participle* stem  
+ *ons*, etc. = Simple Present Indicative, plural.  
+ *ais*, etc. = Imperfect Past Indicative.  
+ *e*, etc. = Simple Present Subjunctive.
- III. The *Simple Present Indicative*  
+ Pronouns *tu*, *nous*, *vous* = Imperative.
- IV. The *Simple Past*, 2nd person,  
+ *se*, etc. = Past Simple Subjunctive.
- V. The *Past Participle*  
+ various tenses of *avoir*, *être* = Compound tenses.

§ 181. Example of tense formation :

Principal Parts : *sentir, sentant, je sens, je sentis, senti.*

I. From Present Infinitive, *sentir*, are obtained :

Simple Future, Indicative.

|              |                 |
|--------------|-----------------|
| je sentir-ai | nous sentir-ons |
| tu sentir-as | vous sentir-ez  |
| il sentir-a  | ils sentir-ont. |

Present Conditional.

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| je sentir-ais | nous sentir-ions  |
| tu sentir-ais | vous sentir-iez   |
| il sentir-ait | ils sentir-aient. |

II. From Participle Present, *sentant*, are obtained :

1. Simple Present plural, Indicative.

|               |
|---------------|
| nous sent-ons |
| vous sent-ez  |
| ils sent-ent. |

2. Imperfect Past, Indicative.

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| je sent-ais | nous sent-ions  |
| tu sent-ais | vous sent-iez   |
| il sent-ait | ils sent-aient. |

3. Simple Present, Subjunctive.

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| je sent-e  | nous sent-ions |
| tu sent-es | vous sent-iez  |
| il sent-e  | ils sent-ent.  |

III. From Simple Present, Indicative: *tu sens, nous sentons, vous sentez*, are obtained :

Imperative.

|      |         |
|------|---------|
|      | sentons |
| sens | sentez  |

IV. From Simple Past, Indicative, *je sentis, tu sentis, etc.*, are obtained :

Simple Past, Subjunctive.

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| je sent-isse  | nous sent-issions |
| tu sent-isses | vous sent-issiez  |
| il sent-ît    | ils sent-issent.  |

V. From Participle Past, *sent*i, are obtained all compound tenses :—*j'ai sent*-i, etc. *j'avais sent*-i, etc. *j'eus sent*-i, etc.

### ENGLISH OF THE FRENCH TENSES.

§ 182. The English given in the paradigms (§§ 188—198) is only one of several possible renderings.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

|                   |                                                    |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| PRESENT SIMPLE    | I love, I do not love, do I love ?                 |
| PRESENT IMPERFECT | I am loving.                                       |
| PRESENT PERFECT   | I have loved, I loved.                             |
| PAST SIMPLE       | I loved, did I love, I did not love.               |
| PAST IMPERFECT    | I was loving, I used to love, did I love, I loved. |
| PAST PERFECT      | I had loved.                                       |
| FUTURE SIMPLE     | I shall love, thou wilt love, etc.                 |
| FUTURE IMPERFECT  | I shall be loving, thou wilt be loving, etc.       |
| FUTURE PERFECT    | I shall have loved, thou wilt have loved, etc.     |

#### CONDITIONAL MOOD.

|         |                                               |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------|
| PRESENT | I should love, thou wouldst love, etc.        |
| PAST    | I should have loved, thou wouldst have loved. |
| FUTURE  | I should love, thou wouldst love, etc.        |

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The Subjunctive Mood of the French is (in mistaken imitation of the Latin Grammars) usually rendered, in Tables of Verbs, by the signs *may*, *might*. This is misleading. It must *much* oftener be turned into English by the corresponding tense of the Indicative. Often the "Accusative with the Infinitive" or some other idiom is the best rendering :

|                                           |                                          |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Je nie qu'il <i>soit</i> en bonne santé.  | I deny that he <i>is</i> in good health. |
| Croyez-vous qu'il le <i>fasse</i> ?       | Do you think that he <i>will</i> do it ? |
| Il désire que je le <i>fasse</i> .        | He desires that I <i>should</i> do it.   |
| Il est allé sans que je le <i>sache</i> . | He went without my <i>knowing</i> it.    |
| Il veut que je le <i>dise</i> .           | He will <i>have me say</i> it.           |

With *may*, *might* (rare) :

|                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------|
| Il l'appelle afin que je lui <i>parle</i> .             |
| He calls him, so that I <i>may</i> speak to him.        |
| Il l'avait appelé afin que je lui <i>parlasse</i> .     |
| He had called him, so that I <i>might</i> speak to him. |

The 3rd Person, Present Tense, Subjunctive Mood, may sometimes be rendered imperatively by the sign '*Let*:' as, *Qu'il aime* : *Let him love*. *Qu'ils aiment* : *Let them love*.

# INTRANSITIVE, REFLEXIVE, IMPERSONAL AND PASSIVE VERBS.

## § 183. Conjugation of Intransitive Verbs. \*

I. In their '*Simple Tenses*' INTRANSITIVE VERBS take the same inflexions as Transitive Verbs :

|                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| <i>I carry.</i> | <i>I dine.</i> |
| Je porte        | Je dîne        |
| Tu portes       | Tu dînes       |
| Il porte, etc.  | Il dîne, etc.  |

II. In their '*Compound Tenses*' most Intransitive Verbs are conjugated by the help of '*avoir*,' like Transitive Verbs of the Active Voice :

(*Transitive*). *J'ai aimé*, I have loved.

(*Intransitive*). *J'ai dîné*, I have dined.

Some take '*être*' instead of '*avoir*.' † The Participle is then made to agree with the *Subject* of the verb, as if the verb were Passive. These are the most important (§ 217):—

|                               |                                        |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <b>Arriver</b> , (to) arrive. | <b>Partir</b> , (to) set out.          |
| <b>Tomber</b> , (to) fall.    | <b>Sortir</b> , (to) go out.           |
| <b>Aller</b> , (to) go.       | <b>Mourir</b> , (to) die.              |
| <b>Venir</b> , (to) come.     | <b>Naître</b> (to) be born.            |
| (With <i>avoir</i> .)         | (With <i>être</i> .)                   |
| <i>I have dined.</i>          | <i>I have arrived or I am arrived.</i> |
| J'ai dîné                     | Je suis arrivé                         |
| Tu as dîné                    | Tu es arrivé                           |
| Il a dîné                     | Il est arrivé                          |
| Nous avons dîné               | Nous sommes arrivés                    |
| Vous avez dîné                | Vous êtes arrivés                      |
| Ils ont dîné                  | Ils sont arrivés.                      |

\* Also called *Neuter Verbs*.

† The same use of '*to be*' with Intransitive Verbs, instead of '*to have*,' occurs sometimes in English : hence,

|                |   |                     |
|----------------|---|---------------------|
| I am come      | = | I have come.        |
| He is arrived  | = | He has arrived.     |
| They were gone | = | They had gone, etc. |

Compare German *ich bin gekommen*, etc.

## § 184. Conjugation of Reflexive\* and Reciprocal Verbs.

I. In their '*Simple Tenses*' REFLEXIVE and RECIPROCAL VERBS take the same inflexions as ordinary verbs.

II. In their '*Compound Tenses*' all Reflexive and Reciprocal Verbs are conjugated by the help of '*être*' instead of '*avoir*.' The Past Participle must be made to agree in gender and number with the direct object of the verb : †

*Je me suis moqué de lui*, I have laughed at him.

*Nous nous sommes moqués de lui*, We have laughed at him.

III. Those Reflexive Verbs which would have no meaning in French without the Reflexive Pronoun, are said to be '*essentially*' reflexive : ‡ as, *se moquer*, (to) laugh at.

IV. Those which are merely Transitive Verbs used reflexively, are said to be '*accidentally*' reflexive : as, *se laver*, (to) wash oneself, from *laver* (to) wash.

## MODELS OF TENSES.

|                           |                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>I laugh at.</i>        | <i>I wash myself.</i>        |
| Je me moque               | Je me lave                   |
| Tu te moques              | Tu te laves                  |
| Il se moque               | Il se lave                   |
| Nous nous moquons         | Nous nous lavons             |
| Vous vous moquez          | Vous vous lavez              |
| Ils se moquent            | Ils se lavent                |
| <i>I have laughed at.</i> | <i>I have washed myself.</i> |
| Je me suis moqué          | Je me suis lavé              |
| Tu t'es moqué             | Tu t'es lavé                 |
| Il s'est moqué            | Il s'est lavé                |
| Nous nous sommes moqués   | Nous nous sommes lavés       |
| Vous vous êtes moqués     | Vous vous êtes lavés         |
| Ils se sont moqués        | Ils se sont lavés.           |

In the **Imperative Mood** *toi* takes the place of *te* : (§ 145.)

|              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| Moque-toi    | Lave-toi    |
| Moquons-nous | Lavons-nous |
| Moquez-vous  | Lavez-vous  |

\* Called sometimes '*Reflective*,' sometimes '*Reflected*' Verbs.

† See SYNTAX.

‡ There are a few such verbs in English; as, (to) *bethink oneself*, *to betake oneself*, etc.

## § 185. Impersonal Verbs.

I. Impersonal Verbs are defective. They are only conjugated in the third person, singular, of the Verb Finite, and in the Infinitive and Participles : *il faut*, it is-necessary, *il neige*, it snows.

II. Those Verbs which are mainly, or always, used impersonally, are said to be ‘*essentially*’ impersonal : as,

*Tonner*, (to) thunder ; *il tonne*, it thunders, etc.

*Falloir*, (to) be necessary ; *il faut*, it is-necessary, etc.

III. Those which are merely ordinary verbs used impersonally are said to be ‘*accidentally*’ impersonal : as,

*Arriver*, (to) happen ; from *arriver*, (to) come.

## § 186. The Passive Voice.\*

I. In French, as in English, there are no special Tense-forms for the Passive Voice. The tenses are formed by prefixing the various parts of the verb ‘*être*’ to the Past Participle. There are no simple tenses ; all the tenses are compound : as,

I am loved.

*Je suis aimé.*

I shall have been loved.

*J'aurai été aimé.*

II. Hence, to conjugate a Passive Verb, it is sufficient to know the Past Participle of the Verb to be conjugated, and all the forms of the verb ‘*être*.’

III. Unlike the ‘Compound Tenses’ of the Active Voice, the Past Participle agrees in the Passive Voice with the Subject of the Verb as in Latin : compare

(Active.) *Nous avons aimé*, we have loved.

(Passive.) *Nous sommes aimés*, we are loved.

---

\* The Passive is much less used in French than in English. Sometimes the ordinary active verb is preferred ; sometimes a reflexive verb.

## PARADIGMS.

## § 187. Observations on the Paradigms.

1. The English given in each tense is only one of many possible renderings. This is particularly true of the Subjunctive. (§ 182.)

2. The Indicative may be followed by a condition, the Conditional Mood must \* be. This, the name '*Conditional*' implies.

3. The Indicative and Conditional forms may be employed in subordinate sentences; the Subjunctive forms are rarely employed otherwise; this the name '*Subjunctive*' implies.

4. The English *may, might, could*, etc., in principal construction must not be rendered by the Subjunctive, but by such equivalent auxiliaries of mood as *pouvoir, devoir*, etc. (See § 182.) Even in subordinate construction they are rarely the renderings of French Subjunctive forms. (See § 182.)

5. The Present Perfect is often used as a Simple Past.

6. The Present Perfect is often called *Past Indefinite*.

7. The Past Simple has different names in different languages, but its use is much the same.

|                        |             |
|------------------------|-------------|
| <i>Perfect</i>         | (Latin).    |
| <i>Aorist</i>          | (Greek).    |
| <i>Past Indefinite</i> | (English).  |
| <i>Præterite</i>       | } (French). |
| <i>Past Definite</i>   |             |
| <i>Imperfect</i>       | (German).   |

8. The usual name of the Past Perfect is *Pluperfect*.

9. When nothing is said to the contrary, the derivative verbs follow the simple.

---

\* See, however, *Use of Moods* in SYNTAX.



|                         | Indicative.                                                                                                             | Subjunctive.                                                                                                          | Conditional.                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present Simple.</b>  | <i>I have.</i><br>j'ai<br>tu as<br>il a<br>nous avons<br>vous avez<br>ils ont                                           | <i>I have.</i><br>j'aie<br>tu aies<br>il ait<br>nous ayons<br>vous ayez<br>ils aient                                  | <i>I should have.</i><br>j'aurais, etc.                                                                                          |
| <b>Pres. Imperfect.</b> | <i>I am having.</i><br>j'ai, etc.                                                                                       | <i>I am having.</i><br>j'aie, etc.                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Present Perfect.</b> | <i>I have had.</i><br>j'ai eu<br>tu as eu<br>il a eu<br>nous avons eu<br>vous avez eu<br>ils ont eu                     | <i>I have had.</i><br>j'aie eu<br>tu aies eu<br>il ait eu<br>nous ayons eu<br>vous ayez eu<br>ils aient eu            |                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Past Simple.</b>     | <i>I had.</i><br>j'eus<br>tu eus<br>il eut<br>nous eûmes<br>vous eûtes<br>ils eurent                                    | <i>I had.</i><br>j'eusse<br>tu eusses<br>il eût<br>nous eussions<br>vous eussiez<br>ils eussent                       |                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Past Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I was having.</i><br>j'avais<br>tu avais<br>il avait<br>nous avions<br>vous aviez<br>ils avaient                     | <i>I was having.</i><br>j'eusse, etc.                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Past Perfect.</b>    | <i>I had had.</i><br>j'avais eu<br>tu avais eu<br>il avait eu<br>nous avions eu<br>vous aviez eu<br>ils avaient eu      | <i>I had had.</i><br>j'eusse eu<br>tu eusses eu<br>il eût eu<br>nous eussions eu<br>vous eussiez eu<br>ils eussent eu | <i>I should have had.</i><br>j'aurais eu<br>tu aurais eu<br>il aurait eu<br>nous aurions eu<br>vous auriez eu<br>ils auraient eu |
| <b>Future Simple.</b>   | <i>I shall have.</i><br>j'aurai<br>tu auras<br>il aura<br>nous aurons<br>vous aurez<br>ils auront                       | <i>I shall have.</i><br>j'aie, etc.                                                                                   | <i>I should have.</i><br>j'aurais<br>tu aurais<br>il aurait<br>nous aurions<br>vous auriez<br>ils auraient                       |
| <b>Fut. Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I shall be having.</i><br>j'aurai, etc.                                                                              | <i>I shall be having.</i><br>j'aie, etc.                                                                              |                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Future Perfect.</b>  | <i>I shall have had.</i><br>j'aurai eu<br>tu auras eu<br>il aura eu<br>nous aurons eu<br>vous aurez eu<br>ils auront eu | <i>I shall have had.</i><br>j'aie eu, etc.                                                                            |                                                                                                                                  |

| Imperative.                                       | Infinitive.                         | Participles.                       | Observations.                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>have.</i><br>aie<br>ayons<br>ayez              | <i>to have.</i><br><br>avoir        | <i>having.</i><br><br>ayant        | <i>Avoir</i> is the usual auxiliary of time (§ 176). |
| <i>have had.</i><br>aie eu<br>ayons eu<br>ayez eu | <i>to have had.</i><br><br>avoir eu | <i>having had.</i><br><br>ayant eu | (§ 187. 6)                                           |
|                                                   |                                     | <i>had.</i><br><br>eu              | (§ 187. 7)                                           |
|                                                   |                                     |                                    |                                                      |
|                                                   |                                     |                                    |                                                      |
|                                                   |                                     |                                    | (§ 187. 8)                                           |
|                                                   |                                     |                                    |                                                      |
|                                                   |                                     |                                    | (§ 213)                                              |
|                                                   |                                     |                                    |                                                      |
|                                                   |                                     |                                    | (§ 177)                                              |
|                                                   |                                     |                                    |                                                      |

|                         | Indicative.                                                                                                                    | Subjunctive.                                                                                                                 | Conditional.                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present Simple.</b>  | <i>I am.</i><br>je suis<br>tu es<br>il est<br>nous sommes<br>vous êtes<br>ils sont                                             | <i>I be.</i><br>je sois<br>tu sois<br>il soit<br>nous soyons<br>vous soyez<br>ils soient                                     | <i>I should be.</i><br>je serais, etc.                                                                                                  |
| <b>Pres. Imperfect.</b> | (Wanting.)                                                                                                                     | (Wanting.)                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Present Perfect.</b> | <i>I have been.</i><br>j' ai été<br>tu as été<br>il a été<br>nous avons été<br>vous avez été<br>ils ont été                    | <i>I have been.</i><br>j'aie été<br>tu aies été<br>il ait été<br>nous ayons été<br>vous ayez été<br>ils aient été            |                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Past Simple.</b>     | <i>I was.</i><br>je fus<br>tu fus<br>il fut<br>nous fûmes<br>vous fûtes<br>ils furent                                          | <i>I were.</i><br>je fusse<br>tu fusses<br>il fût<br>nous fussions<br>vous fussiez<br>ils fussent                            |                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Past Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I was.</i><br>j'étais<br>tu étais<br>il était<br>nous étions<br>vous étiez<br>ils étaient                                   | <i>I were.</i><br>je fusse, etc.                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Past Perfect.</b>    | <i>I had been.</i><br>j'avais été<br>tu avais été<br>il avait été<br>nous avions été<br>vous aviez été<br>ils avaient été      | <i>I had been.</i><br>j'eusse été<br>tu eusses été<br>il eût été<br>nous eussions été<br>vous eussiez été<br>ils eussent été | <i>I should have been.</i><br>j'aurais été<br>tu aurais été<br>il aurait été<br>nous aurions été<br>vous auriez été<br>ils auraient été |
| <b>Future Simple.</b>   | <i>I shall be.</i><br>je serai<br>tu seras<br>il sera<br>nous serons<br>vous serez<br>ils seront                               | <i>I shall be.</i><br>je sois, etc.                                                                                          | <i>I should be.</i><br>je serais<br>tu serais<br>il serait<br>nous serions<br>vous seriez<br>ils seraient                               |
| <b>Fut. Imperfect.</b>  | (Wanting.)                                                                                                                     | (Wanting.)                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Future Perfect.</b>  | <i>I shall have been.</i><br>j'aurai été<br>tu auras été<br>il aura été<br>nous aurons été<br>vous aurez été<br>ils auront été | <i>I shall have been.</i><br>j'aie été, etc.                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                         |

| Imperative.                                                   | Infinitive.                           | Participles.                         | Observations.                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Be.</i><br><br>sois<br><br>soyons<br>soyez                 | <i>To be.</i><br><br>être             | <i>Being.</i><br><br>étant           | <i>Être</i> is the auxiliary of time employed for <i>Reflexive verbs</i> , and for a few <i>Intransitives</i> . See §§ 183, 184. |
| <i>Have been.</i><br><br>aie été<br><br>ayons été<br>ayez été | <i>To have been.</i><br><br>avoir été | <i>Having been.</i><br><br>ayant été | (§ 187. 6)                                                                                                                       |
|                                                               |                                       | <i>Been.</i><br><br>été              | (§ 187. 7)                                                                                                                       |
|                                                               |                                       |                                      |                                                                                                                                  |
|                                                               |                                       |                                      | (§ 187. 8)                                                                                                                       |
|                                                               |                                       |                                      | (§ 213)                                                                                                                          |
|                                                               |                                       |                                      |                                                                                                                                  |
|                                                               |                                       |                                      |                                                                                                                                  |

|                         | Indicative.                                                                                                                                   | Subjunctive.                                                                                                                            | Conditional.                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present Simple.</b>  | <i>I carry.</i><br>je porte<br>tu portes<br>il porte<br>nous portons<br>vous portez<br>ils portent                                            | <i>I carry.</i><br>je porte<br>tu portes<br>il porte<br>nous portions<br>vous portiez<br>ils portent                                    | <i>I should carry.</i><br>je porterais, etc.                                                                                                           |
| <b>Pres. Imperfect.</b> | <i>I am carrying.</i><br>je porte, etc.                                                                                                       | <i>I am carrying.</i><br>je porte, etc.                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Present Perfect.</b> | <i>I have carried.</i><br>j'ai porté<br>tu as porté<br>il a porté<br>nous avons porté<br>vous avez porté<br>ils ont porté                     | <i>I have carried.</i><br>j'aie porté<br>tu aies porté<br>il ait porté<br>nous ayons porté<br>vous ayez porté<br>ils aient porté        |                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Past Simple.</b>     | <i>I carried.</i><br>je portai<br>tu portas<br>il porta<br>nous portâmes<br>vous portâtes<br>ils portèrent                                    | <i>I carried.</i><br>je portasse<br>tu portasses<br>il portât<br>nous portassions<br>vous portassiez<br>ils portassent                  |                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Past Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I was carrying.</i><br>je portais<br>tu portais<br>il portait<br>nous portions<br>vous portiez<br>ils portaient                            | <i>I was carrying.</i><br>je portasse, etc.                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Past Perfect.</b>    | <i>I had carried.</i><br>j'avais porté<br>tu avais porté<br>il avait porté<br>nous avions porté<br>vous aviez porté<br>ils avaient porté      | <i>I had carried.</i><br>j'eusse porté<br>tu eusses porté<br>il eût porté<br>n. eussions porté<br>v. eussiez porté<br>ils eussent porté | <i>I should have carried.</i><br>j'aurais porté<br>tu aurais porté<br>il aurait porté<br>nous aurions porté<br>vous auriez porté<br>ils auraient porté |
| <b>Future Simple.</b>   | <i>I shall carry.</i><br>je porterai<br>tu porteras<br>il portera<br>nous porterons<br>vous porterez<br>ils porteront                         | <i>I shall carry.</i><br>je porte, etc.                                                                                                 | <i>I should carry.</i><br>je porterais<br>tu porterais<br>il porterait<br>nous porterions<br>vous porteriez<br>ils porteraient                         |
| <b>Fut. Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I shall be carrying.</i><br>je porterai, etc.                                                                                              | <i>I shall be carrying.</i><br>je porte, etc.                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Future Perfect.</b>  | <i>I shall have carried.</i><br>j'aurai porté<br>tu auras porté<br>il aura porté<br>nous aurons porté<br>vous aurez porté<br>ils auront porté | <i>I shall have carried.</i><br>j'aie porté, etc.                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                        |

| Imperative.                                                    | Infinitive.                            | Participles.                          | Observations.                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Carry.</i><br>porte<br>portons<br>portez                    | <i>To carry.</i><br>porter             | <i>Carrying.</i><br>portant           | Like <i>Porter</i> are all verbs in <i>-er</i> , except <i>aller</i> and <i>envoyer</i> . For slight variations in spelling, see § 201. |
| <i>Have carried.</i><br>ais porté<br>ayons porté<br>ayez porté | <i>To have carried.</i><br>avoir porté | <i>Having carried.</i><br>ayant porté | (§ 187. 6)                                                                                                                              |
|                                                                |                                        | <i>Carried.</i><br>porté              | (§ 187. 7)                                                                                                                              |
|                                                                |                                        |                                       |                                                                                                                                         |
|                                                                |                                        |                                       | (§ 187. 8)                                                                                                                              |
|                                                                |                                        |                                       | (§ 213)                                                                                                                                 |
|                                                                |                                        |                                       | (§ 177)                                                                                                                                 |
|                                                                |                                        |                                       |                                                                                                                                         |

|                         | Indicative.                                                                                                                              | Subjunctive.                                                                                                                           | Conditional.                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present Simple.</b>  | <i>I finish.</i><br>je finis<br>tu finis<br>il finit<br>nous finissons<br>vous finissez<br>ils finissent                                 | <i>I finish.</i><br>je finisse<br>tu finisses<br>il finisse<br>nous finissions<br>vous finissiez<br>ils finissent                      | <i>I should finish.</i><br>je finirais, etc.                                                                                                      |
| <b>Pres. Imperfect.</b> | <i>I am finishing.</i><br>je finis, etc.                                                                                                 | <i>I am finishing.</i><br>je finisse, etc.                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Present Perfect.</b> | <i>I have finished.</i><br>j'ai fini<br>tu as fini<br>il a fini<br>nous avons fini<br>vous avez fini<br>ils ont fini                     | <i>I have finished.</i><br>j'aie fini<br>tu aies fini<br>il ait fini<br>nous ayons fini<br>vous ayez fini<br>ils aient fini            |                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Past Simple.</b>     | <i>I finished.</i><br>je finis<br>tu finis<br>il finit<br>nous finîmes<br>vous finîtes<br>ils finirent                                   | <i>I finished.</i><br>je finisse<br>tu finisses<br>il finît<br>nous finissions<br>vous finissiez<br>ils finissent                      |                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Past Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I was finishing.</i><br>je finissais<br>tu finissais<br>il finissait<br>nous finissions<br>vous finissiez<br>ils finissaient          | <i>I was finishing.</i><br>je finisse, etc.                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Past Perfect.</b>    | <i>I had finished.</i><br>j'avais fini<br>tu avais fini<br>il avait fini<br>nous avions fini<br>vous aviez fini<br>ils avaient fini      | <i>I had finished.</i><br>j'eusse fini<br>tu eusses fini<br>il eût fini<br>nous eussions fini<br>vous eussiez fini<br>ils eussent fini | <i>I should have finished.</i><br>j'aurais fini<br>tu aurais fini<br>il aurait fini<br>nous aurions fini<br>vous auriez fini<br>ils auraient fini |
| <b>Future Simple.</b>   | <i>I shall finish.</i><br>je finirai<br>tu finiras<br>il finira<br>nous finirons<br>vous finirez<br>ils finiront                         | <i>I shall finish.</i><br>je finisse, etc.                                                                                             | <i>I should finish.</i><br>je finirais<br>tu finirais<br>il finirait<br>nous finirions<br>vous finiriez<br>ils finiraient                         |
| <b>Fut. Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I shall be finishing.</i><br>je finirai, etc.                                                                                         | <i>I shall be finishing.</i><br>je finisse, etc.                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Future Perfect.</b>  | <i>I shall have finished.</i><br>j'aurai fini<br>tu auras fini<br>il aura fini<br>nous aurons fini<br>vous aurez fini<br>ils auront fini | <i>I shall have finished.</i><br>j'aie fini, etc.                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                   |

| Imperative.                                                          | Infinitive.                                | Participles.                              | Observations.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Finish.</i><br><br>finis<br><br>finissons<br>finissez             | <i>To finish.</i><br><br>finir             | <i>Finishing.</i><br><br>finissant        | Like <i>finir</i> are most verbs in -ir. <i>Hair</i> omits the diæresis in Present Indicative singular: <i>je hais, tu hais, il hait</i> ; and circumflex accent in Simple Past plural: <i>nous haïmes, vous haïtes</i> . <i>Fleurir</i> = blossom, is like <i>finir</i> , = flourish has <i>florissant, florissant, florisse</i> , etc. <i>Bénir</i> , meaning to consecrate, has <i>bénit</i> ; meaning to bless, has <i>béni</i> .<br>(§ 187. 7) |
| <i>Have finished.</i><br><br>aie fini<br><br>ayons fini<br>ayez fini | <i>To have finished.</i><br><br>avoir fini | <i>Having finished.</i><br><br>ayant fini |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                      |                                            | fini                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                      |                                            |                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                      |                                            |                                           | (§ 187. 8)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                                      |                                            |                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                      |                                            |                                           | (§ 213)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                                                                      |                                            |                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                      |                                            |                                           | (§ 177)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                                                                      |                                            |                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |



|                         | Indicative.                                                                                                                                | Subjunctive.                                                                                                                         | Conditional.                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present Simple.</b>  | <i>I feel.</i><br>je sens<br>tu sens<br>il sent<br>nous sentons<br>vous sentez<br>ils sentent                                              | <i>I feel.</i><br>je sente<br>tu sentes<br>il sente<br>nous sentions<br>vous sentiez<br>ils sentent                                  | <i>I should feel.</i><br>je sentirais, etc.                                                                                                     |
| <b>Pres. Imperfect.</b> | <i>I am feeling.</i><br>je sens, etc.                                                                                                      | <i>I am feeling.</i><br>je sente, etc.                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Present Perfect.</b> | <i>I have felt.</i><br>j'ai senti<br>tu as senti<br>il a senti<br>nous avons senti<br>vous avez senti<br>ils ont senti                     | <i>I have felt.</i><br>j'aie senti<br>tu aies senti<br>il ait senti<br>nous ayons senti<br>vous ayez senti<br>ils aient senti        |                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Past Simple.</b>     | <i>I felt.</i><br>je sentis<br>tu sentis<br>il sentit<br>nous sentîmes<br>vous sentîtes<br>ils sentirent                                   | <i>I felt.</i><br>je sentisse<br>tu sentisses<br>il sentît<br>nous sentissions<br>vous sentissiez<br>ils sentissent                  |                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Past Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I was feeling.</i><br>je sentais<br>tu sentais<br>il sentait<br>nous sentions<br>vous sentiez<br>ils sentaient                          | <i>I was feeling.</i><br>je sentisse, etc.                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Past Perfect.</b>    | <i>I had felt.</i><br>j'avais senti<br>tu avais senti<br>il avait senti<br>nous avions senti<br>vous aviez senti<br>ils avaient senti      | <i>I had felt.</i><br>j'eusse senti<br>tu eusses senti<br>il eût senti<br>n. eussions senti<br>v. eussiez senti<br>ils eussent senti | <i>I should have felt.</i><br>j'aurais senti<br>tu aurais senti<br>il aurait senti<br>n. aurions senti<br>v. auriez senti<br>ils auraient senti |
| <b>Future Simple.</b>   | <i>I shall feel.</i><br>je sentirai<br>tu sentiras<br>il sentira<br>nous sentirons<br>vous sentirez<br>ils sentiront                       | <i>I shall feel.</i><br>je sente, etc.                                                                                               | <i>I should feel.</i><br>je sentirais<br>tu sentirais<br>il sentirait<br>nous sentirions<br>vous sentiriez<br>ils sentiraient                   |
| <b>Fut. Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I shall be feeling.</i><br>je sentirai                                                                                                  | <i>I shall be feeling.</i><br>je sente, etc.                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Future Perfect.</b>  | <i>I shall have felt.</i><br>j'aurai senti<br>tu auras senti<br>il aura senti<br>nous aurons senti<br>vous aurez senti<br>ils auront senti | <i>I shall have felt.</i><br>j'aie senti, etc.                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                 |

| Imperative.                                                 | Infinitive.                             | Participles.                           | Observations.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Feel.</i><br>sens<br>sentons<br>sentez                   | <i>To feel.</i><br><br>sentir           | <i>Feeling.</i><br><br>sentant         | Like <i>sentir</i> are <i>mentir</i> (lie), <i>se repentir</i> (repent), <i>partir</i> (set out), <i>sortir</i> (go out), <i>dormir</i> (sleep), <i>servir</i> (serve). But <i>partir</i> and <i>sortir</i> take <i>être</i> instead of <i>avoir</i> . (§ 183.) |
| <i>Have felt.</i><br>aie senti<br>ayons senti<br>ayez senti | <i>To have felt.</i><br><br>avoir senti | <i>Having felt.</i><br><br>ayant senti | (§ 187. 6)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                                             |                                         | <i>Felt.</i><br><br>senti              | (§ 187. 7)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                                             |                                         |                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                                                             |                                         |                                        | (§ 187. 8)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                                             |                                         |                                        | (§ 213)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                                             |                                         |                                        | (§ 177)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                                             |                                         |                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

|                         | Indicative.                                                                                                              | Subjunctive.                                                                                                           | Conditional.                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present Simple.</b>  | <i>I owe.</i><br>je dois<br>tu dois<br>il doit<br>nous devons<br>vous devez<br>ils doivent                               | <i>I owe.</i><br>je doive<br>tu doives<br>il doive<br>nous devions<br>vous deviez<br>ils doivent                       | <i>I should owe.</i><br>je devrais, etc.                                                                                          |
| <b>Pres. Imperfect.</b> | <i>I am owing.</i><br>je dois, etc.                                                                                      | <i>I am owing.</i><br>je doive, etc.                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Present Perfect.</b> | <i>I have owed.</i><br>j'ai dû<br>tu as dû<br>il a dû<br>nous avons dû<br>vous avez dû<br>ils ont dû                     | <i>I have owed.</i><br>j'aie dû<br>tu aies dû<br>il ait dû<br>nous ayons dû<br>vous ayez dû<br>ils aient dû            |                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Past Simple.</b>     | <i>I owed.</i><br>je dus<br>tu dus<br>il dut<br>nous dûmes<br>vous dûtes<br>ils durent                                   | <i>I owed.</i><br>je dusse<br>tu dusses<br>il dût<br>nous dussions<br>vous dussiez<br>ils dussent                      |                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Past Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I was owing.</i><br>je devais<br>tu devais<br>il devait<br>nous devions<br>vous deviez<br>ils devaient                | <i>I was owing.</i><br>je dusse, etc.                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Past Perfect.</b>    | <i>I had owed.</i><br>j'avais dû<br>tu avais dû<br>il avait dû<br>nous avions dû<br>vous aviez dû<br>ils avaient dû      | <i>I had owed.</i><br>j'eusse dû<br>tu eusses dû<br>il eût dû<br>nous eussions dû<br>vous eussiez dû<br>ils eussent dû | <i>I should have owed.</i><br>j'aurais dû<br>tu aurais dû<br>il aurait dû<br>nous aurions dû<br>vous auriez dû<br>ils auraient dû |
| <b>Future Simple.</b>   | <i>I shall owe.</i><br>je devrai<br>tu devras<br>il devra<br>nous devons<br>vous devrez<br>ils devront                   | <i>I shall owe.</i><br>je doive, etc.                                                                                  | <i>I should owe.</i><br>je devrais<br>tu devrais<br>il devrait<br>nous devrions<br>vous devriez<br>ils devraient                  |
| <b>Fut. Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I shall be owing.</i><br>je devrai, etc.                                                                              | <i>I shall be owing.</i><br>je doive, etc.                                                                             |                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Future Perfect.</b>  | <i>I shall have owed.</i><br>j'aurai dû<br>tu auras dû<br>il aura dû<br>nous aurons dû<br>vous aurez dû<br>ils auront dû | <i>I shall have owed.</i><br>j'aie dû, etc.                                                                            |                                                                                                                                   |

| Imperative.                                        | Infinitive.                      | Participles.                    | Observations.                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Owe.</i><br>dois<br>devons<br>devez             | <i>To owe.</i><br>devoir         | <i>Owing.</i><br>devant         | Like <i>devoir</i> are <i>recevoir</i> , <i>apercevoir</i> , etc. (§ 225).                      |
| <i>Have owed.</i><br>aie dû<br>ayons dû<br>ayez dû | <i>To have owed.</i><br>avoir dû | <i>Having owed.</i><br>ayant dû | (§ 187. 6)                                                                                      |
|                                                    |                                  | <i>Owed.</i><br>dû *            | * Has accent in masc. sing. only:<br>dû, due<br>dus, dues<br>Verbs above do not have it at all. |
|                                                    |                                  |                                 |                                                                                                 |
|                                                    |                                  |                                 | (§ 187. 8)                                                                                      |
|                                                    |                                  |                                 | (§ 213)                                                                                         |
|                                                    |                                  |                                 | (§ 177)                                                                                         |
|                                                    |                                  |                                 |                                                                                                 |

|                         | Indicative.                                                                                                                            | Subjunctive.                                                                                                                         | Conditional.                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present Simple.</b>  | <i>I sell.</i><br>je vends<br>tu vends<br>il vend<br>nous vendons<br>vous vendez<br>ils vendent                                        | <i>I sell.</i><br>je vende<br>tu vendes<br>il vende<br>nous vendions<br>vous vendiez<br>ils vendent                                  | <i>I should sell.</i><br>je vendrais, etc.                                                                                                      |
| <b>Pres. Imperfect.</b> | <i>I am selling.</i><br>je vends, etc.                                                                                                 | <i>I am selling.</i><br>je vende, etc.                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Present Perfect.</b> | <i>I have sold.</i><br>j'ai vendu<br>tu as vendu<br>il a vendu<br>nous avons vendu<br>vous avez vendu<br>ils ont vendu                 | <i>I have sold.</i><br>j'aie vendu<br>tu aies vendu<br>il ait vendu<br>nous ayons vendu<br>vous ayez vendu<br>ils aient vendu        |                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Past Simple.</b>     | <i>I sold.</i><br>je vendis<br>tu vendis<br>il vendit<br>nous vendîmes<br>vous vendîtes<br>ils vendirent                               | <i>I sold.</i><br>je vendisse<br>tu vendisses<br>il vendît<br>nous vendissions<br>vous vendissiez<br>ils vendissent                  |                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Past Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I was selling.</i><br>je vendais<br>tu vendais<br>il vendait<br>nous vendions<br>vous vendiez<br>ils vendaient                      | <i>I was selling.</i><br>je vendisse, etc.                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Past Perfect.</b>    | <i>I had sold.</i><br>j'avais vendu<br>tu avais vendu<br>il avait vendu<br>n. avions vendu<br>v. aviez vendu<br>ils avaient vendu      | <i>I had sold.</i><br>j'eusse vendu<br>tu eusses vendu<br>il eût vendu<br>n. eussions vendu<br>v. eussiez vendu<br>ils eussent vendu | <i>I should have sold.</i><br>j'aurais vendu<br>tu aurais vendu<br>il aurait vendu<br>n. aurions vendu<br>v. auriez vendu<br>ils auraient vendu |
| <b>Future Simple.</b>   | <i>I shall sell.</i><br>je vendrai<br>tu vendras<br>il vendra<br>nous vendrons<br>vous vendrez<br>ils vendront                         | <i>I shall sell.</i><br>je vende, etc.                                                                                               | <i>I should sell.</i><br>je vendrais<br>tu vendrais<br>il vendrait<br>nous vendrions<br>vous vendriez<br>ils vendraient                         |
| <b>Fut. Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I shall be selling.</i><br>je vendrai, etc.                                                                                         | <i>I shall be selling.</i><br>je vende, etc.                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Future Perfect.</b>  | <i>I shall have sold.</i><br>j'aurai vendu<br>tu auras vendu<br>il aura vendu<br>n. aurons vendu<br>v. aurez vendu<br>ils auront vendu | <i>I shall have sold.</i><br>j'aie vendu, etc.                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                 |

| Imperative.                                                 | Infinitive.                         | Participles.                       | Observations.                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sell.</i><br>vends<br>vendons<br>vendez                  | <i>To sell.</i><br>vendre           | <i>Selling.</i><br>vendant         | Like <i>vendre</i> are most verbs in -re. |
|                                                             |                                     |                                    |                                           |
| <i>Have sold.</i><br>aie vendu<br>ayons vendu<br>ayez vendu | <i>To have sold.</i><br>avoir vendu | <i>Having sold.</i><br>ayant vendu | (§ 187. 6)                                |
|                                                             |                                     | <i>Sold.</i><br>vendu              | (§ 187. 7)                                |
|                                                             |                                     |                                    |                                           |
|                                                             |                                     |                                    |                                           |
|                                                             |                                     |                                    | (§ 187. 8)                                |
|                                                             |                                     |                                    |                                           |
|                                                             |                                     |                                    | (§ 213)                                   |
|                                                             |                                     |                                    | (§ 177)                                   |
|                                                             |                                     |                                    |                                           |

|                         | <b>Indicative.</b>                                                                                                                       | <b>Subjunctive.</b>                                                                                                                    | <b>Conditional.</b>                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present Simple.</b>  | <i>I appear.</i><br>je paraissais<br>tu paraissais<br>il paraissait<br>nous paraissions<br>vous paraissiez<br>ils paraissaient           | <i>I appear.</i><br>je paraisse<br>tu paraisses<br>il paraisse<br>nous paraissions<br>vous paraissiez<br>ils paraissent                | <i>I should appear.</i><br>je paraîtrais, etc.                                                                                                  |
| <b>Pres. Imperfect.</b> | <i>I am appearing.</i><br>je paraissais, etc.                                                                                            | <i>I am appearing.</i><br>je paraisse, etc.                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Present Perfect.</b> | <i>I have appeared.</i><br>j'ai paru<br>tu as paru<br>il a paru<br>nous avons paru<br>vous avez paru<br>ils ont paru                     | <i>I have appeared.</i><br>j'aie paru<br>tu aies paru<br>il ait paru<br>nous ayons paru<br>vous ayez paru<br>ils aient paru            |                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Past Simple.</b>     | <i>I appeared.</i><br>je parus<br>tu parus<br>il parut<br>nous parûmes<br>vous parûtes<br>ils parurent                                   | <i>I appeared.</i><br>je parusse<br>tu parusses<br>il parût<br>nous parussions<br>vous parussiez<br>ils parussent                      |                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Past Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I was appearing.</i><br>je paraissais<br>tu paraissais<br>il paraissait<br>nous paraissions<br>vous paraissiez<br>ils paraissaient    | <i>I was appearing.</i><br>je parusse, etc.                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Past Perfect.</b>    | <i>I had appeared.</i><br>j'avais paru<br>tu avais paru<br>il avait paru<br>nous avions paru<br>vous aviez paru<br>ils avaient paru      | <i>I had appeared.</i><br>j'eusse paru<br>tu eusses paru<br>il eût paru<br>nous eussions paru<br>vous eussiez paru<br>ils eussent paru | <i>I shd. have appeared.</i><br>j'aurais paru<br>tu aurais paru<br>il aurait paru<br>nous aurions paru<br>vous auriez paru<br>ils auraient paru |
| <b>Future Simple.</b>   | <i>I shall appear.</i><br>je paraîtrai<br>tu paraîtras<br>il paraîtra<br>nous paraîtrons<br>vous paraîtrez<br>ils paraîtront             | <i>I shall appear.</i><br>je paraisse, etc.                                                                                            | <i>I should appear.</i><br>je paraîtrais<br>tu paraîtrais<br>il paraîtrait<br>nous paraîtrions<br>vous paraîtriez<br>ils paraîtraient           |
| <b>Fut. Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I shall be appearing.</i><br>je paraîtrai, etc.                                                                                       | <i>I shall be appearing.</i><br>je paraisse, etc.                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Future Perfect.</b>  | <i>I shall have appeared.</i><br>j'aurai paru<br>tu auras paru<br>il aura paru<br>nous aurons paru<br>vous aurez paru<br>ils auront paru | <i>I shall have appeared.</i><br>j'aie paru, etc.                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                 |

| Imperative.                                                  | Infinitive.                                | Participles.                              | Observations.                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Appear.</i><br>parais<br>paraissions<br>paraissez         | <i>To appear.</i><br><br>paraître          | <i>Appearing.</i><br><br>paraissant       | So verbs in -aitre, -oître, except naître. Paraître is defective. |
|                                                              |                                            |                                           |                                                                   |
| <i>Have appeared.</i><br>aie paru<br>ayons paru<br>ayez paru | <i>To have appeared.</i><br><br>avoir paru | <i>Having appeared.</i><br><br>ayant paru | (§ 187. 6)                                                        |
|                                                              |                                            | <i>Appeared.</i><br><br>paru              | (§ 187. 7)                                                        |
|                                                              |                                            |                                           |                                                                   |
|                                                              |                                            |                                           |                                                                   |
|                                                              |                                            |                                           | (§ 187. 8)                                                        |
|                                                              |                                            |                                           |                                                                   |
|                                                              |                                            |                                           | (§ 213)                                                           |
|                                                              |                                            |                                           | (§ 177) <sub>1</sub>                                              |
|                                                              |                                            |                                           |                                                                   |



|                         | Indicative.                                                                                                                                   | Subjunctive.                                                                                                                            | Conditional.                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present Simple.</b>  | <i>I paint.</i><br>je peins<br>tu peins<br>il peint<br>nous peignons<br>vous peignez<br>ils peignent                                          | <i>I paint.</i><br>je peigne<br>tu peignes<br>il peigne<br>nous peignons<br>vous peigniez<br>ils peignent                               | <i>I should paint.</i><br>je peindrais, etc.                                                                                                       |
| <b>Pres. Imperfect.</b> | <i>I am painting.</i><br>je peins, etc.                                                                                                       | <i>I am painting.</i><br>je peigne, etc.                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Present Perfect.</b> | <i>I have painted.</i><br>j'ai peint<br>tu as peint<br>il a peint<br>nous avons peint<br>vous avez peint<br>ils ont peint                     | <i>I have painted.</i><br>j'aie peint<br>tu aies peint<br>il ait peint<br>nous ayons peint<br>vous ayez peint<br>ils aient peint        |                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Past Simple.</b>     | <i>I painted.</i><br>je peignis<br>tu peignis<br>il peignit<br>nous peignîmes<br>vous peignîtes<br>ils peignirent                             | <i>I painted.</i><br>je peignisse<br>tu peignisses<br>il peignît<br>nous peignissions<br>vous peignissiez<br>ils peignissent            |                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Past Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I was painting.</i><br>je peignais<br>tu peignais<br>il peignait<br>nous peignions<br>vous peigniez<br>ils peignaient                      | <i>I was painting.</i><br>je peignisse, etc.                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Past Perfect.</b>    | <i>I had painted.</i><br>j'avais peint<br>tu avais peint<br>il avait peint<br>nous avions peint<br>vous aviez peint<br>ils avaient peint      | <i>I had painted.</i><br>j'eusse peint<br>tu eusses peint<br>il eût peint<br>n. eussions peint<br>v. eussiez peint<br>ils eussent peint | <i>I should have painted.</i><br>j'aurais peint<br>tu aurais peint<br>il aurait peint<br>n. aurions peint<br>v. auriez peint<br>ils auraient peint |
| <b>Future Simple.</b>   | <i>I shall paint.</i><br>je peindrai<br>tu peindras<br>il peindra<br>nous peindrons<br>vous peindrez<br>ils peindront                         | <i>I shall paint.</i><br>je peigne, etc.                                                                                                | <i>I should paint.</i><br>je peindrais<br>tu peindrais<br>il peindrait<br>nous peindrions<br>vous peindriez<br>ils peindraient                     |
| <b>Fut. Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I shall be painting.</i><br>je peindrai, etc.                                                                                              | <i>I shall be painting.</i><br>je peigne, etc.                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Future Perfect.</b>  | <i>I shall have painted.</i><br>j'aurai peint<br>tu auras peint<br>il aura peint<br>nous aurons peint<br>vous aurez peint<br>ils auront peint | <i>I shall have painted.</i><br>j'aie peint, etc.                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                    |

| Imperative.                                                    | Infinitive.                            | Participles.                          | Observations.                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Paint.</i><br>peins<br>peignons<br>peignez                  | <i>To paint.</i><br>peindre            | <i>Painting.</i><br>peignant          | Like <i>peindre</i> are verbs in <i>-aindre</i> and <i>-eindre</i> . § 298. |
| <i>Have painted.</i><br>aie peint<br>ayons peint<br>ayez peint | <i>To have painted.</i><br>avoir peint | <i>Having painted.</i><br>ayant peint | (§ 187. 6)                                                                  |
|                                                                |                                        | <i>Painted.</i><br>peint              |                                                                             |
|                                                                |                                        |                                       | (§ 187. 7)                                                                  |
|                                                                |                                        |                                       | (§ 187. 8)                                                                  |
|                                                                |                                        |                                       | (§ 213)                                                                     |
|                                                                |                                        |                                       | (§ 177)                                                                     |
|                                                                |                                        |                                       |                                                                             |

|                         | Indicative.                                                                                                                                       | Subjunctive.                                                                                                                                    | Conditional.                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present Simple.</b>  | <i>I lead.</i><br>je conduis<br>tu conduis<br>il conduit<br>nous conduisons<br>vous conduisez<br>ils conduisent                                   | <i>I lead.</i><br>je conduise<br>tu conduises<br>il conduise<br>nous conduisions<br>vous conduisiez<br>ils conduisent                           | <i>I should lead.</i><br>je conduirais, etc.                                                                                                               |
| <b>Pres. Imperfect.</b> | <i>I am leading.</i><br>je conduis, etc.                                                                                                          | <i>I am leading.</i><br>je conduise, etc.                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Present Perfect.</b> | <i>I have led.</i><br>j'ai conduit<br>tu as conduit<br>il a conduit<br>n. avons conduit<br>v. avez conduit<br>ils ont conduit                     | <i>I have led.</i><br>j'aie conduit<br>tu aies conduit<br>il ait conduit<br>n. ayons conduit<br>v. ayez conduit<br>ils aient conduit            |                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Past Simple.</b>     | <i>I led.</i><br>je conduisis<br>tu conduisis<br>il conduisit<br>nous conduisîmes<br>vous conduistez<br>ils conduisirent                          | <i>I led.</i><br>je conduisisse<br>tu conduisisses<br>il conduisît<br>n. conduisissions<br>v. conduisissiez<br>ils conduisissent                |                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Past Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I was leading.</i><br>je conduisais<br>tu conduisais<br>il conduisait<br>nous conduisions<br>vous conduisiez<br>ils conduisaient               | <i>I was leading.</i><br>je conduisisse, etc.                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Past Perfect.</b>    | <i>I had led.</i><br>j'avais conduit<br>tu avais conduit<br>il avait conduit<br>n. avions conduit<br>v. aviez conduit<br>ils avaient conduit      | <i>I had led.</i><br>j'eusse conduit<br>tu eusses conduit<br>il eût conduit<br>n. eussions conduit<br>v. eussiez conduit<br>ils eussent conduit | <i>I should have led.</i><br>j'aurais conduit<br>tu aurais conduit<br>il aurait conduit<br>n. aurions conduit<br>v. auriez conduit<br>ils auraient conduit |
| <b>Future Simple.</b>   | <i>I shall lead.</i><br>je conduirai<br>tu conduiras<br>il conduira<br>nous conduirons<br>vous conduirez<br>ils conduiront                        | <i>I shall lead.</i><br>je conduise, etc.                                                                                                       | <i>I should lead.</i><br>je conduirais<br>tu conduirais<br>il conduirait<br>nous conduirions<br>vous conduiriez<br>ils conduiraient                        |
| <b>Fut. Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I shall be leading.</i><br>je conduirai, etc.                                                                                                  | <i>I shall be leading.</i><br>je conduise, etc.                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Future Perfect.</b>  | <i>I shall have led.</i><br>j'aurai conduit<br>tu auras conduit<br>il aura conduit<br>n. aurons conduit<br>v. aurez conduit<br>ils auront conduit | <i>I shall have led.</i><br>j'aie conduit, etc.                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                            |

| Imperative.                                                      | Infinitive.                          | Participles.                        | Observations.                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Lead.</i><br>conduis<br>conduisons<br>conduisez               | <i>To lead.</i><br>conduire          | <i>Leading.</i><br>conduisant       | Like <i>conduire</i> are all verbs in <i>-uire</i> , except <i>luire</i> and <i>nuire</i> , which have for Past Participle <i>lui, nui</i> . |
| <i>Have led.</i><br>aie conduit<br>ayons conduit<br>ayez conduit | <i>To have led.</i><br>avoir conduit | <i>Having led.</i><br>ayant conduit | (§ 187. 6)                                                                                                                                   |
|                                                                  |                                      | <i>Led.</i><br>conduit              | (§ 187. 7)                                                                                                                                   |
|                                                                  |                                      |                                     |                                                                                                                                              |
|                                                                  |                                      |                                     | (§ 187. 8)                                                                                                                                   |
|                                                                  |                                      |                                     | (§ 213)                                                                                                                                      |
|                                                                  |                                      |                                     | (§ 177)                                                                                                                                      |
|                                                                  |                                      |                                     | d                                                                                                                                            |

|                         | <b>Indicative.</b>                                                                                                                                              | <b>Subjunctive.</b>                                                                                                                                           | <b>Conditional.</b>                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present Simple.</b>  | <i>I wash myself.</i><br>je me lave<br>tu te laves<br>il se lave<br>nous nous lavons<br>vous vous lavez<br>ils se lavent                                        | <i>I wash myself.</i><br>je me lave<br>tu te laves<br>il se lave<br>nous nous lavions<br>vous vous laviez<br>ils se lavent                                    | <i>I should wash myself.</i><br>je me laverais, etc.                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Pres. Imperfect.</b> | <i>I am washing myself.</i><br>je me lave                                                                                                                       | <i>I am washing myself.</i><br>je me lave                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Present Perfect.</b> | <i>I have washed myself.</i><br>je me suis lavé<br>tu t'es lavé<br>il s'est lavé<br>n. n. sommes lavés<br>v. vous êtes lavés<br>ils se sont lavés               | <i>I have washed myself.</i><br>je me sois lavé<br>tu te sois lavé<br>il se soit lavé<br>n. n. soyons lavés<br>v. v. soyez lavés<br>ils se soient lavés       |                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Past Simple.</b>     | <i>I washed myself.</i><br>je me lavai<br>tu te lavas<br>il se lava<br>nous nous lavâmes<br>vous vous lavâtes<br>ils se lavèrent                                | <i>I washed myself.</i><br>je me lavasse<br>tu te lavasses<br>il se lavât<br>n. nous lavassions<br>v. vous lavassiez<br>ils se lavassent                      |                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Past Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I was washing myself.</i><br>je me lavais<br>tu te lavais<br>il se lavait<br>nous nous lavions<br>vous vous laviez<br>ils se lavaient                        | <i>I was washing myself.</i><br>je me lavasse, etc.                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Past Perfect.</b>    | <i>I had washed myself.</i><br>je m'étais lavé<br>tu t'étais lavé<br>il s'était lavé<br>n. n. étions lavés<br>v. vous étiez lavés<br>ils s'étaient lavés        | <i>I had washed myself.</i><br>je me fusse lavé<br>tu te fusses lavé<br>il se fût lavé<br>n. n. fussions lavés<br>v. v. fussiez lavés<br>ils se fussent lavés | <i>I shd. have washd. myself.</i><br>je me serais lavé<br>tu te serais lavé<br>il se serait lavé<br>n. n. serions lavés<br>v. v. seriez lavés<br>ils se seraient lavés |
| <b>Future Simple.</b>   | <i>I shall wash myself.</i><br>je me laverai<br>tu te laveras<br>il se lavera<br>nous nous laverons<br>vous vous laverez<br>ils se laveront                     | <i>I shall wash myself.</i><br>je me lave, etc.                                                                                                               | <i>I should wash myself.</i><br>je me laverais<br>tu te laverais<br>il se laverait<br>n. nous laverions<br>v. vous laveriez<br>ils se laveraient                       |
| <b>Fut. Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I shall be washing myself.</i><br>je me laverai                                                                                                              | <i>I shall be washing myself.</i><br>je me lave                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Future Perfect.</b>  | <i>I shall have washed myself.</i><br>je me serai lavé<br>tu te seras lavé<br>il se sera lavé<br>n. n. serons lavés<br>v. v. serez lavés<br>ils se seront lavés | <i>I shall have washed myself.</i><br>je me sois lavé                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                        |

| <b>Imperative.</b>                                              | <b>Infinitive.</b>                                | <b>Participles.</b>                               | <b>Observations.</b> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Wash thyself.</i><br>lave-toi *<br>lavons-nous<br>lavez-vous | <i>To wash oneself.</i><br><br>se laver           | <i>Washing oneself.</i><br><br>se lavant          | See § 184.           |
|                                                                 |                                                   |                                                   |                      |
|                                                                 | <i>To have washed oneself.</i><br><br>s'être lavé | <i>Having washed oneself.</i><br><br>s'étant lavé | (§ 187. 6)           |
|                                                                 |                                                   | <i>Washed.</i><br><br>lavé                        | (§ 187. 7)           |
|                                                                 |                                                   |                                                   |                      |
|                                                                 |                                                   |                                                   |                      |
|                                                                 |                                                   |                                                   | (§ 187. 8)           |
|                                                                 |                                                   |                                                   |                      |
|                                                                 |                                                   |                                                   | (§ 213)              |
|                                                                 |                                                   |                                                   | (§ 177)              |
| * (§ 184)                                                       |                                                   |                                                   |                      |

|                         | <b>Indicative.</b>                                                                                                                                      | <b>Subjunctive.</b>                                                                                                                               | <b>Conditional.</b>                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Present Simple.</b>  | <i>I arrive.</i><br>j'arrive<br>tu arrives<br>il arrive<br>nous arrivons<br>vous arrivez<br>ils arrivent                                                | <i>I arrive.</i><br>j'arrive<br>tu arrives<br>il arrive<br>nous arrivions<br>vous arriviez<br>ils arrivent                                        | <i>I should arrive.</i><br>j'arriverais, etc.                                                                                                                |
| <b>Pres. Imperfect.</b> | <i>I am arriving.</i><br>j'arrive, etc.                                                                                                                 | <i>I am arriving.</i><br>j'arrive, etc.                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Present Perfect.</b> | <i>I have arrived.</i><br>je suis arrivé<br>tu es arrivé<br>il est arrivé<br>n. sommes arrivés<br>vous êtes arrivés<br>ils sont arrivés                 | <i>I have arrived.</i><br>je sois arrivé<br>tu sois arrivé<br>il soit arrivé<br>n. soyons arrivés<br>vous soyez arrivés<br>ils soient arrivés     |                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Past Simple.</b>     | <i>I arrived.</i><br>j'arrivai<br>tu arrivas<br>il arriva<br>nous arrivâmes<br>vous arrivâtes<br>ils arrivèrent                                         | <i>I arrived.</i><br>j'arrivasse<br>tu arrivasses<br>il arrivât<br>nous arrivassions<br>vous arrivassiez<br>ils arrivassent                       |                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Past Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I was arriving.</i><br>j'arrivais<br>tu arrivais<br>il arrivait<br>nous arrivions<br>vous arriviez<br>ils arrivaient                                 | <i>I was arriving.</i><br>j'arrivasse, etc.                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Past Perfect.</b>    | <i>I had arrived.</i><br>j'étais arrivé<br>tu étais arrivé<br>il était arrivé<br>nous étions arrivés<br>vous étiez arrivés<br>ils étaient arrivés       | <i>I had arrived.</i><br>je fusse arrivé<br>tu fusses arrivé<br>il fût arrivé<br>n. fussions arrivés<br>v. fussiez arrivés<br>ils fussent arrivés | <i>I shd. have arrived.</i><br>je serais arrivé<br>tu serais arrivé<br>il serait arrivé<br>n. serions arrivés<br>vous seriez arrivés<br>ils seraient arrivés |
| <b>Future Simple.</b>   | <i>I shall arrive.</i><br>j'arriverai<br>tu arriveras<br>il arrivera<br>nous arriverons<br>vous arriverez<br>ils arriveront                             | <i>I shall arrive.</i><br>j'arrive, etc.                                                                                                          | <i>I should arrive.</i><br>j'arriverais<br>tu arriverais<br>il arriverait<br>nous arriverions<br>vous arriveriez<br>ils arriveraient                         |
| <b>Fut. Imperfect.</b>  | <i>I shall be arriving.</i><br>j'arriverai, etc.                                                                                                        | <i>I shall be arriving.</i><br>j'arrive                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Future Perfect.</b>  | <i>I shall have arrived.</i><br>je serai arrivé<br>tu seras arrivé<br>il sera arrivé<br>nous serons arrivés<br>vous serez arrivés<br>ils seront arrivés | <i>I shall have arrived</i><br>je sois arrivé, etc.                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                              |

| Imperative.                                                            | Infinitive.                                | Participles.                     | Observations. |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------|
| <i>Arrive.</i><br>arrive<br>arrivons<br>arrivez                        | <i>To arrive.</i><br><br>arriver           | <i>Arriving.</i><br><br>arrivant | See § 188.    |
| <i>Have arrived.</i><br>sois arrivé<br>soyons arrivés<br>soyez arrivés | <i>To have arrived.</i><br><br>être arrivé |                                  | (§ 187. 6)    |
|                                                                        |                                            | <i>Arrived.</i><br><br>arrivé    | (§ 187. 7)    |
|                                                                        |                                            |                                  |               |
|                                                                        |                                            |                                  |               |
|                                                                        |                                            |                                  | (§ 187. 8)    |
|                                                                        |                                            |                                  |               |
|                                                                        |                                            |                                  | (§ 213)       |
|                                                                        |                                            |                                  | (§ 177)       |
|                                                                        |                                            |                                  |               |



## VARIATIONS AND IRREGULARITIES IN VERBS.

§ 200. The irregularities (so-called) of French verbs may be conveniently divided into two great divisions:—

Division 1. Those irregularities which are mere variations made according to fixed rules in modern pronunciation.

Division 2. Those irregularities which, although like the above often arising from fixed rules, have their origin in Old French or even in Latin.

### DIVISION I

#### VARIATIONS MADE ACCORDING TO FIXED RULES IN MODERN PRONUNCIATION.

These variations may be further divided thus:

Variations depending upon hiatus (§ 48).

Variations depending upon the changeable pronunciation of *c* and *g* (§§ 71, 58).

Variations depending upon the tonic accent and mute *e*.

#### § 201. Variations of spelling connected with 'hiatus.'

(1.) To prevent hiatus, some verbs in the 2nd person Imperative restore '*s*' (the characteristic ending of the 2nd person of every tense) whenever the pronouns *en* or *y* follow.

Parles-en, *mais dépêche-toi*. Speak of it, but be quick.

Va, vas-y, *si tu veux*. Go, go there, if you like.

The only verbs in which such an addition is necessary are those of the 1st conjugation and the verbs *assaillir* (Imp. *assaille*), *offrir* (*offre*), *ouvrir* (*ouvre*), *cueillir* (*cueille*), *savoir* (*sache*), with derivatives. In all other verbs '*s*' is always present: as, *Viens voir ma maison*; come and see my house.

(2.) Also to prevent hiatus, some interrogative forms of the 3rd person singular restore '*t*,' the characteristic ending of the 3rd person. The '*t*,' like '*s*,' ought to have been joined to the verb, but custom has established the use of a hyphen:

Le fera-t-il ?

Will he do it ?

Oui, sans doute il le fera. Yes, no doubt he will do it.

§ 202. Variations of spelling, etc., connected with the changeable pronunciation of *c* and *g*.

*c* before *a, o, u* = *k*: *car, code, cube.*

*c* before *e, i, y* = *s*: *cette, cidre, cygne.*

*g* before *a, o, u* = *g*: *gant, gond, aigu.*

*g* before *e, i, y* = *j*: *gingembre, gymnase.*

The pronunciation which *c* or *g* has in the Present Infinitive must by some expedient be preserved throughout the verb :

1. To retain the sound of *s*, the *c* before *a, o, u* takes a cedilla : *avancer, j'avanceais, nous avançons : recevoir, reçu.*

2. To retain the sound of *j*, the *g* before *a, o, u* keeps the *e* of the ending : *manger, mangeant, nous mangeons.*

§ 203. Variations of spelling connected with 'e mute,' etc.

i. *y* is changed into *i* before an *e* mute : *employer, j'emploie, j'emploierai; ayant, j'ai.*

ii. The syllable which precedes a mute syllable (§ 25) always bears either a full or a semi-accent (§ 14. 4), and often needs strengthening. This is done—(1) by change of accent from acute to grave ; (2) by the addition of a grave accent ; (3) by the addition of a consonant ; (4) by changing the syllable altogether. The last way is old, and occurs in about twelve verbs only (§§ 208, 209). The other ways are living ways.

(a.) When during the conjugation of any verb an acute and a mute syllable occur in succession, it is usual to strengthen the first syllable by changing the acute accent into a grave : *as, répéter, répète.\**

(b.) When during the conjugation of any verb two mute syllables would occur in succession, it is usual to strengthen the first syllable by means of a grave accent : *mener, je mène, je mènerai.†*

---

\* In the Fut. Ind. and Conditional the acute accent is usual, *je répèterai*, but sometimes the grave is found, *je répêterai*. In verbs in *éger* the acute accent is usual throughout the verb, but here again the grave is sometimes put.

† But most verbs in *-eler* and *-eter* double the consonant, instead of putting an accent : *appeler, j'appelle, j'appellerai, jeter, je jette, je jetterai.* (§ 219.)

## DIVISION II.

§ 204. *VERBS WITH VARIATIONS, ETC., WHICH HAVE THEIR ORIGIN IN OLD FRENCH, ETC.*

*These verbs may be conveniently given in six subdivisions:—*

**SUBDIVISION 1.** *Verbs which in their principal parts sufficiently show how far they differ from the model verbs. (§ 178.)*

**SUBDIVISION 2.** *Verbs which do not in their principal parts sufficiently show how far they differ from the model verbs, but in which the Future Indicative and Present Conditional stem differs from the ordinary Present stem.*

**SUBDIVISION 3.** *Verbs which do not in their principal parts sufficiently show how far they differ from the model verbs, but in which the Present stem varies according as the tonic accent is on the stem or the ending.*

*(Compare variations connected with e mute) (§ 208).*

**SUBDIVISION 4.** *Verbs which do not in their principal parts sufficiently show how far they differ from the model verbs, but in which not only (α) the Present stem varies according as the tonic accent is on the stem or the ending, but also (β) the Future and Conditional stem is different from the Present stem.*

**SUBDIVISION 5.** *Verbs which have peculiarities of various kinds.*

**SUBDIVISION 6.** *Verbs which are defective.*

*Obs. 1.*—Most of these verbs are strong, but some are weak (§ 174).

*Obs. 2.*—When nothing is said to the contrary, the compounds of these verbs are like the simple ones: ex., *remettre* is like *mettre*.

*Obs. 3.*—Nothing is said of the compound tenses. They are always formed as explained in § 179. v.

## § 205. SUBDIVISION I.

Verbs which in their principal parts sufficiently show how far they differ from the model verbs.

(*Strong Verbs.*)

**Rire**, *to laugh.*

Rire, riant, je ris ; je ris ; ri.

**Mettre**, *to put.*

Mettre, mettant, je mets ; je mis ; mis.

**Croire**, *to believe.*

Croire, croyant, je crois ; je crus ; cru.

**Moudre**, *to grind.*

Moudre, moulant, je mouds ; je moulus ; moulu.

**Résoudre**, *to resolve.*

Résoudre, résolvant, je résous ; je résolus ; résolu.\*

**Vivre**, *to live.*

Vivre, vivant, je vis ; je vécus ; vécu.

**Lire**, *to read.*

Lire, lisant, je lis ; je lus ; lu.

**Taire**, *to conceal.*

Taire, taisant, je tais ; je tus ; tu. †

**Conclure**, *to conclude.*

Conclure, concluant, je conclus ; je conelus ; conclu.

\* Like *résoudre* are *absoudre*, *absolve*, *dissoudre*, *dissolve*, except that whereas *résoudre* has for Past Participle, *résolu* and *résous* (rarely the latter), *absoudre*, and *dissoudre* have *absous* and *dissous*.

† So *plaire*, except *il plaît* ; but *il tait*. *Tu* is sometimes written with accent *tâ*, like *dâ* (§ 193).

(*Weak Verbs.*)

**Ouvrir, to open.\***

Ouvrir, ouvrant, j'ouvre ; j'ouvris ; ouvert.

**Écrire, to write.**

Écrire, écrivant, j'écris ; j'écrivis ; écrit.

**Traire, to milk.**

Traire, trayant, je traite ; — ; trait.

**Naître, to be-born.**

Naître, naissant, je nais ; je naquis ; né.

**Battre, to beat.**

Battre, battant, je bats ; je battis ; battu.

**Coudre, to sew.**

Coudre, cousant, je couds ; je cousis ; cousu.

**Vaincre, to conquer.**

Vaincre, vainquant, je vains ; † je vainquis ; vaincu.

**Fuir, to flee.**

Fuir, fuyant, je fuis ; je fuis ; fui.

**Bouillir, to boil.**

Bouillir, bouillant, je bous ; je bouillis ; bouilli.

**Assaillir, to assail.**

Assaillir, assaillant, j'assaille ; j'assaillis ; assailli.

**Suivre, to follow.**

Suivre, suivant, je suis ; je suivis ; suivi.

**Vêtir, to clothe.**

Vêtir, vêtant, je vêts ; je vêtis ; vêtu.

---

\* Like *ouvrir*, verbs in *vrir* and *frir*.

† Je vains, tu vains, il vaine.

## § 206. SUBDIVISION II.

Verbs which do not in their principal parts sufficiently show how far they differ from the model verbs, but in which the Simple Future Indicative and Present Conditional stem differs from the ordinary Present stem.

**Courir, to run. (Strong Verb.)**

Courir, courant, je cours ; je courus ; couru.

*je courrai.*

*je courrais.*

**Voir, to see. (Strong Verb.)**

Voir, voyant, je vois ; je vis ; vu.

*je verrai.*

*je verrais.*

**Pourvoir, to provide, and prévoir, to foresee, have pourvoirai, prévoirai.**

**Envoyer, to send. (Weak Verb.)**

Envoyer, envoyant, j'envoie ; j'envoyai ; envoyé.

*j'enverrai.*

*j'enverrais.*

**So renvoyer, to send away, only (§ 226).**

**Cueillir, to gather. (Weak Verb.)**

Cueillir, cueillant, je cueille ; je cueillis ; cueilli.

*je cueillerai.*

*je cueillerais.*

## § 207. SUBDIVISION III.

Verbs which do not in their principal parts sufficiently show how far they differ from the model verbs, but in which

the Present stem varies according as the tonic accent is on the stem or the ending.\*

**Boire, to drink. (Strong Verb.)**

Boire, buvant, je bois ; je bus ; bu.

|    |                 |                  |                    |
|----|-----------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. | je <i>bois</i>  | tu <i>bois</i>   | il <i>boit</i>     |
|    | nous buvons     | vous buvez       | ils <i>boivent</i> |
| 2. | je buvais       | tu buvais        | il buvait          |
|    | nous buvions    | vous buviez      | ils buvaient       |
| 3. | je <i>boive</i> | tu <i>boives</i> | il <i>boive</i>    |
|    | nous buvions    | vous buviez      | ils <i>boivent</i> |
| 4. | <i>bois</i>     | buvons           | buvez              |

**Prendre, to take. (Strong Verb.)**

Prendre, prenant, je prends ; je pris ; pris.

|    |                  |                   |                     |
|----|------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. | je prends        | tu prends         | il prend            |
|    | nous prenons     | vous prenez       | ils <i>prennent</i> |
| 2. | je prenais       | tu prenais        | il prenait          |
|    | nous prenions    | vous preniez      | ils prenaient       |
| 3. | je <i>prenne</i> | tu <i>prennes</i> | il <i>prenne</i>    |
|    | nous prenions    | vous preniez      | ils <i>prennent</i> |
| 4. | prends           | prenons           | prenez.             |

§ 208. SUBDIVISION IV.

Verbs which do not in their principal parts sufficiently show how far they differ from the model verbs, but in which not only (a) the Present stem varies according as the tonic accent is on the stem or the ending, but also (β) the Future and Conditional stem is different from the Present stem.

---

\* The tonic accent is always laid upon the last syllable if the word does not end in *e mute*, and upon the last but one if it does end in *e mute* (§ 14).

**Tenir.** (Strong Verb.)

Tenir, tenant, je tiens ; je tins ; tenu.

- |                        |                    |                       |
|------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| (a) 1. je <i>tiens</i> | tu <i>tiens</i>    | il <i>tient</i>       |
| nous <i>tenons</i>     | vous <i>tenez</i>  | ils <i>tiennent</i>   |
| 2. je <i>tenais</i>    | tu <i>tenais</i>   | il <i>tenait</i>      |
| nous <i>tenions</i>    | vous <i>teniez</i> | ils <i>tenaient</i>   |
| 3. je <i>tiens</i>     | tu <i>tiens</i>    | il <i>tenne</i>       |
| nous <i>tenions</i>    | vous <i>teniez</i> | ils <i>tiennent</i> . |
| 4. <i>tiens</i>        | <i>tenons</i>      | <i>tenez</i>          |
- (β) 1. je *tiendrai*  
2. je *tiendrais*.

**Acquérir, to acquire.** (Strong Verb.)

Acquérir, acquérant, j'acquiers ; j'acquis ; acquis.

- |                           |                       |                         |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| (a) 1. j' <i>acquiers</i> | tu <i>acquiers</i>    | il <i>acquiert</i>      |
| nous <i>acquérons</i>     | vous <i>acquérez</i>  | ils <i>acquièrent</i>   |
| 2. j' <i>acquerais</i>    | tu <i>acquerais</i>   | il <i>acquerrait</i>    |
| nous <i>acquérions</i>    | vous <i>acquériez</i> | ils <i>acquerraient</i> |
| 3. j' <i>acquière</i>     | tu <i>acquières</i>   | il <i>acquière</i>      |
| nous <i>acquérions</i>    | vous <i>acquériez</i> | ils <i>acquièrent</i>   |
| 4. <i>acquiers</i>        | <i>acquérons</i>      | <i>acquérez</i>         |
- (β) 1. j'*acquerrai*.  
2. j'*acquerrais*.

**Mourir, to die.** (Strong Verb.)

Mourir, mourant, je meurs ; je mourus ; mort.

- |                        |                     |                      |
|------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| (a) 1. je <i>meurs</i> | tu <i>meurs</i>     | il <i>meurt</i>      |
| nous <i>mourons</i>    | vous <i>mourez</i>  | ils <i>meurent</i>   |
| 2. je <i>mourais</i>   | tu <i>mourais</i>   | il <i>mourait</i>    |
| nous <i>mourions</i>   | vous <i>mouriez</i> | ils <i>mouraient</i> |
| 3. je <i>meure</i>     | tu <i>meures</i>    | il <i>meure</i>      |
| nous <i>mourions</i>   | vous <i>mouriez</i> | ils <i>meurent</i>   |
| 4. <i>meurs</i>        | <i>mourons</i>      | <i>mourez</i>        |
- (β) 1. je *mourrai*.  
2. je *mourrais*.

\* *Venir* is like *tenir* in the simple tenses (§ 183). *Quérir*, to fetch, is used only in the Present Infinitive. *Mourir* takes *être* in the compound tenses (§ 183).



**Mouvoir, to move.** (Strong Verb.)

Mouvoir, mouvant, je meus ; je mus ; mu.

- |        |               |             |               |
|--------|---------------|-------------|---------------|
| (a) 1. | je meus       | tu meus     | il meut       |
|        | nous mouvons  | vous mouvez | ils meuvent   |
| 2.     | je mouvais    | tu mouvais  | il mouvait    |
|        | nous mouvions | vous moviez | ils mouvaient |
| 8.     | je meure      | tu meures   | il meure      |
|        | nous mouvions | vous moviez | ils meuvent   |
| 4.     | meus          | mouvons     | mouvez        |

- (β) 1. je mouvrai.  
 2. je mouvrais.

**Recevoir, to receive.** (§ 198.) (Strong Verb.)

Recevoir, recevant, je reçois ; je reçus ; reçu.\*

- |        |                |               |                |
|--------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| (a) 1. | je reçois      | tu reçois     | il re oit      |
|        | nous recevons  | vous recevez  | ils reçoivent  |
| 2.     | je recevais    | tu recevais   | il recevait    |
|        | nous recevions | vous receviez | ils recevaient |
| 8.     | je reçoive     | tu reçoives   | il reçoive     |
|        | nous recevions | nous receviez | ils reçoivent  |
| 4.     | reçois         | recevons      | recevez        |

- (β) 1. je recevrai.  
 2. je recevrais.

**Vouloir, to be willing (will).** (Strong Verb.)

Vouloir, voulant, je veux ; je voulus ; voulu.

- |        |               |              |                    |
|--------|---------------|--------------|--------------------|
| (a) 1. | je veux       | tu veux      | il veut.           |
|        | nous voulons  | vous voulez  | ils veulent        |
| 2.     | je voulais    | tu voulais   | il voulait         |
|        | nous voulions | vous vouliez | ils voulaient      |
| 8.     | je veuille    | tu veuilles  | il veuille         |
|        | nous voulions | vous vouliez | ils veuillent      |
| 4.     | veux          | voulons      | voulez, veuillez † |

- (β) 1. je voudrai.  
 2. je voudrais.

---

\* For use of *cedilla*, see § 202.

† Notice that in *vouloir* the Present stem is subject to variations, *voul-*, *veul-*, *veuill-*. The form *Veuillez* means *be good enough*, and is the more common form.

**Valoir**, *to be worth.* (Strong Verb.)

**Valoir**, *valant*, je vaux ; je valus ; valu.

|                |             |              |
|----------------|-------------|--------------|
| (a) 1. je vaux | tu vaux     | il vaut      |
| nous valons    | vous valez  | ils valent   |
| 2. je valais   | tu valais   | il valait    |
| nous valions   | vous valiez | ils valaient |
| 3. je vaille   | tu vailles  | il vaille    |
| nous valions   | vous valiez | ils vaillent |
| 4. vaux        | valons      | valez        |

- (β) 1. je vaudrai  
2. je vaudrais

Notice that in **valoir** it is only in the Present Subjunctive that the Present stem varies. In **prévaloir**, to prevail, *-val-* remains even there:

|                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| <i>je prévale</i>   | <i>nous prévalions</i> |
| <i>tu prévalues</i> | <i>vous prévaliez</i>  |
| <i>il prévale</i>   | <i>ils prévalent</i>   |

For change of *l* into *u*, compare § 140.

**Falloir**, *to be necessary.* (Strong Verb.)

**Falloir**, —\*, il faut ; il fallut ; fallu.

- (a) 1. il faut.  
2. il fallait.  
3. il fallut.  
4. il *faillit*.

- (β) 1. il *faudra*.  
2. il *faudrait*.

---

\* It is not usual to give a Present Participle to Impersonal Verbs.

## § 209. SUBDIVISION V.

Verbs which have peculiarities of various kinds.

**Pleuvoir, to rain.** (Strong Verb.)

Pleuvoir, —, il pleut ; il plut ; plu.

- (a) 1. il pleut.  
 2. il pleuvait.  
 8, il pleuve.  
 4. (wanting).  
 (β) 1. il pleuvra.  
 2. il pleuvrait.

**Pouvoir, to be able (can, may).** (Strong Verb.)

Pouvoir, pouvant, je peux ; je pus ; pu.

- |                    |               |               |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------|
| (a) 1. *je peux    | tu peux       | il peut       |
| nous pouvons       | vous pouvez   | ils peuvent   |
| 2. je pouvais      | tu pouvais    | il pouvait    |
| nous pouvions      | vous pouviez  | ils pouvaient |
| 8. je puisse       | tu puisses    | il puisse     |
| nous puissions     | vous puissiez | ils puissent  |
| 4. (wanting).      |               |               |
| (β) 1. je pourrai. |               |               |
| 2. je pourrais.    |               |               |

**Avoir, to have.** (Strong Verb.)

Avoir, ayant, j'ai ; j'eus ; eu.

- |                |            |             |
|----------------|------------|-------------|
| (a) 1. j'ai    | tu as      | il a        |
| nous avons     | vous avez  | ils ont     |
| 2. j'avais     | tu avais   | il avait    |
| nous avions    | vous aviez | ils avaient |
| 8. j'aie       | tu aies    | il ait      |
| nous ayons     | vous ayez  | ils aient   |
| 4. aie         | ayons      | ayez        |
| (β) 1. j'aurai |            |             |
| 2. j'aurais    |            |             |

---

\* Or je puis, tu peux, il peut. *Puis-je* only is used, not *peux-je*.

**Faire, to do.** (Strong Verb.)

Faire, faisant, je fais ; je fis ; fait.

- |                |              |               |
|----------------|--------------|---------------|
| (a) 1. je fais | tu fais      | il fait       |
| nous faisons*  | vous faites  | ils font      |
| 2. je faisais  | tu faisais   | il faisait    |
| nous faisions  | vous faisiez | ils faisaient |
| 3. je fasse    | tu fasses    | il fasse      |
| nous fassions  | vous fassiez | ils fassent   |
| 4. fais        | faisons      | faites        |
- (β) 1. je ferai  
2. je ferais

**Dire, to say.** (Strong Verb.) (§ 227.)

Dire, disant, je dis ; je dis ; dit.

- |               |            |            |
|---------------|------------|------------|
| (a) 1. je dis | tu dis     | il dit     |
| nous disons   | vous dites | ils disent |

*Redire* only has *redites*. Other compounds of *dire* have *disez*.

**Maudire** has Present Participle *maudissant* and hence (§ 179) *je maudissais* in Past Imp. Ind. ; *nous maudissons*, *vous maudissez*, *ils maudissent* in Pres. Indicative ; *je maudisse* in Pres. Subjunctive.

**Asseoir, to seat.** (Strong Verb.)

Asseoir, asseyant, j'assieds ; j'assis ; assis.

- |                  |               |                |
|------------------|---------------|----------------|
| (a) 1. j'assieds | tu assieds    | il assied      |
| nous asseyons    | vous asseyez  | ils asseyent   |
| 2. j'asseyais    | tu asseyais   | il asseyait    |
| nous asseyions   | vous asseyiez | ils asseyaient |
| 3. j'asseye      | tu asseyes    | il asseye      |
| nous asseyions   | vous asseyiez | ils asseyent   |
| 4. assieds       | asseyons      | asseyez        |
- (β) 1. j'asseyerai or j'assiérai  
2. j'asseyerais or j'assiérais

\* On pronunciation of *ai* in this verb, see § 28.

**Savoir, to know. (Strong Verb.)**

Savoir, sachant, je sais ; je sus ; su.

- |                |              |              |
|----------------|--------------|--------------|
| (a) 1. je sais | tu sais      | il sait      |
| nous savons    | vous savez   | ils savent   |
| 2. je savais   | tu savais    | il savait    |
| nous savions   | vous saviez  | ils savaient |
| 8. je sache    | tu saches    | il sache     |
| nous sachions  | vous sachiez | ils sachent  |
| 4. sache       | sachons      | sachez       |
- (β) 1. je saurai  
2. je saurais

**Etre, to be. (Strong Verb.)**

Etre, étant ; je suis ; je fus ; été.

- |                |            |             |
|----------------|------------|-------------|
| (a) 1. je suis | tu es      | il est      |
| nous sommes    | vous êtes  | ils sont    |
| 2. j'étais     | tu étais   | il était    |
| nous étions    | vous étiez | ils étaient |
| 8. je sois     | tu sois    | il soit     |
| nous soyons    | vous soyez | ils soient  |
| 4. sois        | soyons     | soyez       |
- (β) 1. je serai  
2. je serais

**Aller, to go.\* (Weak Verb.)**

Aller, allant, je vais ; j'allai ; allé.

- |                    |             |              |
|--------------------|-------------|--------------|
| (a) 1. je vais     | tu vas      | il va        |
| nous allons        | vous allez  | ils vont     |
| 2. j'allais        | tu allais   | il allait    |
| nous allions       | vous alliez | ils allaient |
| 8. j'aille (§ 207) | tu ailles   | il aille     |
| nous allions       | vous alliez | ils aillent  |
| 4. va              | allons      | allez        |
- (β) 1. j'irai  
2. j'irais

\* *Aller* has obtained its tenses from three Latin verbs, *adnare*, *vadere*, *ire*. It takes *être* in compound tenses. (§ 183.)

## § 210. SUBDIVISION VI.

Verbs which are defective.

**Ouïr**, to hear. (Weak Verb.)

The forms *ouïr*, *ouï*, are almost the only parts of this verb that are now used.

[**Gésir**, to lie down.] (Strong Verb.)

The Present Infinitive is obsolete. The only forms now in common use are :

IND. PRES. il git, ils gisent

IMP. il gisait, ils gisaient

PART. PRES. gisant

**Choir**, to fall. (Strong Verb.)

The only existing forms are :

INF. PRES. choir

PART. PAST chu both rare

**Echoir**, to fall and to be due.

Rarely used, except in the following forms :—

IND. PRES. il échoit, ils échoient

INF. PRES. échoir

PART. échéant, échu

So *Déchoir*, except Pres. Participle, which is obsolete ; *échéant*, on the contrary, is often found. The compound tenses of both are common. *Choir* and *échoir* take *être* in compound tenses, like *tomber* (see § 217 for *déchoir*).

\* **Clore**, to shut. (Strong Verb.)

Only used, and even then rarely, in the following forms :—

IND. PRES. je clos, tu clos, il clôt.

„ FUT. je clorai

SUBJ. PRES. je close

INF. PRES. clore

PAST PART. clos

So *éclore*, which is more common, as it is the only way of rendering the intransitive form of the verb (to hatch), whereas *clore* has given place to *fermer*.

---

\* *Clore* is the same as *clure* in *conclure*.

## NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

## § 211. Strong and Weak Verbs.

1. Any form of a verb which is accented on the stem is said to be '*strong*.' Any form of a verb which is accented on the ending is said to be '*weak*.' A verb which possesses a strong Simple Past Indicative is a strong verb, *je tins*. A verb which possesses a weak Simple Past Indicative is a weak verb: *je finis*.

2. All strong verbs have some weak tenses. Many weak verbs have some strong tenses.

3. All strong verbs are old. Many verbs which were formerly strong are now weak. Many strong verbs have become defective; some have disappeared altogether. Every new verb introduced into the language follows one of two conjugations, either the weak conjugation in *-er* (*porter*), or the weak conjugation in *-ir* (*finir*). Hence the strong conjugation may be called the ancient or dead conjugation, and the weak conjugation the modern or living conjugation.

4. Both strong and weak verbs may be also irregular.

5. The strong verbs are few in number, the weak verbs are very numerous; there are no strong verbs in the conjugation in *-er*. There are a few in the conjugation in *-ir*, and many in the conjugations in *-oir* and *-re*.

## 6. Strong Verbs.

In the Conjugation in **-ir** are found :

|        |        |          |          |
|--------|--------|----------|----------|
| gésir  |        | tenir    | tins     |
| mourir | mourus | venir    | vins     |
| courir | courus | quérir   | } acquis |
|        |        | acquérir |          |

In the Conjugation in **-oir** are found :

|              |        |          |         |
|--------------|--------|----------|---------|
| avoir        | eus    | savoir   | sus     |
| chaloir      | chalut | seoir    | } assis |
| choir        | chus   | asseoir  |         |
| devoir, etc. | dus    | valoir   | valus   |
| falloir      | fallut | vouloir  | voulus  |
| mouvoir      | mus    | voir     | vis     |
| pleuvoir     | plut   | pourvoir | pourvus |
| pouvoir      | pus    |          |         |

In the Conjugation in **-re** are found :

|            |           |                |         |
|------------|-----------|----------------|---------|
| boire      | bus       | mettre         | mis     |
| circoncire | circoncis | moudre         | moulus  |
| conclure   | conclus   | paraître, etc. | parus   |
| croître    | crûs      | plaire         | plus    |
| croire     | crus      | taire          | tus     |
| dire       | dis       | prendre        | pris    |
| être       | fus       | résoudre       | résolus |
| faire      | fis       | rire           | ris     |
| lire       | lus       | vivre          | vécus*  |

## 7. Weak Verbs.

Verbs like *porter*.

Aller, envoyer.

Verbs like *sentir*.

Verbs like *finir*.

Assaillir, bouillir, couvrir, cueillir, faillir, fêrir, fuir, haïr, issir, offrir, ouïr, ouvrir, souffrir, vêtir.

Verbs like *vendre*.

Verbs like *peindre*.

Verbs like *conduire*.

Battre, braire, bruire, coudre, écrire, frire, naître, suivre, traire, vaincre.

---

\* Some of the verbs in *-us* (O.F. *-ui*) seem at first sight to be weak verbs. They may be called '*semi-strong*.'



### § 212. The four Latin and the four French Conjugations.

1. The conjugation in **-er** corresponds to the first conjugation of the Latin : *portare, porter*.

2. The conjugation in **-ir** has a double origin :

(a) The simple or non-inchoative verbs, *sentir, mentir, etc.*, correspond to the verbs of the fourth conjugation, *sentire, mentire, etc.*

(b) The enlarged or inchoative verbs, *fleurir, languir, etc.*, correspond to a great extent (in form, not in meaning) to the really inchoative or inceptive verbs of the third conjugation of the Latin, *florescere, languescere, etc.*

3. The conjugation in **-oir** corresponds to the second conjugation of the Latin : *avoir (habere), devoir (debere), etc.*

4. The conjugation in **-re** corresponds to the third conjugation of the Latin : *vendre (vendere), lire (legere), etc.*

### § 213. Future Indicative and Present Conditional.

It is convenient to speak of the Future Indicative and of the Present Conditional as of simple formation ; in reality they are compound :—

(a) The Future has been formed by the Present tense Indicative of *avoir* with the Infinitive ; thus, *j'aimerai = j'ai (à) aimer*. The Latin Future has been rejected.

(b) Similarly in the Conditional Present the endings of the Past Imperfect Indicative have been added.

## § 214. Tenses formed from the Latin.

The only tense-forms of Latin origin which still remain in French are—to use the Latin Grammar names—

|                                |                      |                     |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Present Indicative, Active :   | <i>canto</i>         | <i>je chante</i>    |
| Imperfect Indicative, Active : | <i>cantabam</i>      | <i>je chantais</i>  |
| Perfect Indicative, Active :   | <i>cantavi</i>       | <i>je chantai</i>   |
| Present Subjunctive, Active :  | <i>cantem</i>        | <i>je chante</i>    |
| Pluperfect Subjunctive, Active | <i>canta(vi)ssem</i> | <i>je chantasse</i> |
| Imperative, Active :           | <i>canta</i>         | <i>chante</i>       |
| Infinitive, Active :           | <i>cantare</i>       | <i>chanter</i>      |

The Gerunds and Present Participle seem together to have given the French Present Participle : *chantant*, from *cantantem* and *cantandum*.

The Past Participle passive remains : *chanté*, *cantatus*.

All the remaining parts of a French verb are of French formation.

## § 215. -s final in 1st Person Singular.

(a) The -s final, which in some of the French tenses is found in the first person singular, has no right there; in no Latin tense is such an ending found in the first person.

(β) Some verbs of the 2nd Conjugation are regular : *je cueille*, *j'assaille*, *j'ouvre*, *j'offre*.

(γ) In modern verse the -s, where usually present, may often be omitted if necessary to the rhyme. Thus at the end of a line *je dois*, *je doi* ; *je vois*, *je voi* ; *je dis*, *je di* ; *je vais*, *je vai*, are equally correct.\*

---

\* It must be borne in mind that in French the rhyme must if possible, both the ear and the eye.

## § 216. -t final in 3rd Person Singular.

1. Here and there in the 3rd Person Singular the -t of the Latin has been dropped.

2. Till about the middle of the thirteenth century this -t remained in singular of all tenses as it does now in the plural.

The -t was omitted, no doubt because it was not sounded. Afterwards the sound of the t was given to interrogative forms, to prevent hiatus (§§ 201.). But as the origin of this t was forgotten, it was written as we now have it, between two hyphens.

## INDICATIVE PRESENT.

| LATIN. | OLD FRENCH. | MODERN FRENCH.   |
|--------|-------------|------------------|
| cantat | il chantet  | <i>il chante</i> |
| dormit | il dormet   | il dort          |
| vendit | il vendet   | <i>il vend</i>   |

## INDICATIVE PAST IMPERFECT.

|           |             |             |
|-----------|-------------|-------------|
| cantabat  | il chantoit | il chantait |
| dormiebat | il dormoit  | il dormait  |
| vendebat  | il vendoit  | il vendait  |

## INDICATIVE PAST SIMPLE (Perfect).

|          |            |                  |
|----------|------------|------------------|
| cantavit | il chantat | <i>il chanta</i> |
| dormivit | il dormit  | il dormit        |
| vendidit | il vendit  | il vendit.       |

## SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

|         |            |                  |
|---------|------------|------------------|
| cantet  | il chantet | <i>il chante</i> |
| dormiat | il dormet  | <i>il dorme</i>  |
| vendat  | il vendet  | <i>il vende.</i> |

In two verbs only, the -t still shows itself in this tense : *il ait* (habeat), *il soit* (sit).

## PAST IMPERFECT.

|             |             |            |
|-------------|-------------|------------|
| cantavisset | il chantast | il chantât |
| dormivisset | il dormist  | il dormît  |
| vendidisset | il vendist  | il vendît. |

3. The FUTURE INDICATIVE and PRESENT CONDITIONAL follow *avoir* as usual :

|              |                    |       |              |
|--------------|--------------------|-------|--------------|
| il chanterat | <i>il chantera</i> | il at | <i>il a.</i> |
|--------------|--------------------|-------|--------------|

## § 217. Use of 'Avoir' and 'Être' with Intransitive Verbs.

*Avoir* is employed with Active Verbs; *être* with Passive Verbs. Some intransitive verbs have a position between the two, and employ sometimes one, sometimes the other, according as the active or passive idea predominates. This is the general principle, but usage does not always correspond.

1. Intransitive Verbs which always take *être* in their compound tenses:

|                |                                          |
|----------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Aller</i>   | to go.                                   |
| <i>Arriver</i> | to arrive, to reach, to come, etc.       |
| <i>Venir</i>   | to come.                                 |
| <i>Éclore</i>  | to hatch, to dawn, etc.                  |
| <i>Entrer</i>  | to come in, to walk in, etc.             |
| <i>Sortir</i>  | to go out, to walk out, etc.             |
| <i>Choir</i>   | to fall.                                 |
| <i>Tomber</i>  | to fall, to fall down, to fall off, etc. |
| <i>Naître</i>  | to be born, to rise, to arise, etc.      |
| <i>Mourir</i>  | to die.                                  |
| <i>Décéder</i> | to die.                                  |

2. The following Intransitive Verbs take sometimes *avoir*, sometimes *être*.

|                    |                                            |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>Aborder</i>     | to land, to approach, to board.            |
| <i>Accourir</i>    | to run towards, to hasten.                 |
| <i>Accroître</i>   | to increase, to improve.                   |
| <i>Apparaître</i>  | to appear, seem.                           |
| <i>Cesser</i>      | to cease, to leave off, to stop.           |
| <i>Convenir</i>    | to be fit for;—to agree, to admit.         |
| <i>Croître</i>     | to grow, to increase.                      |
| <i>Décamper</i>    | to decamp, to march off.                   |
| <i>Déchoir</i>     | to decrease, to fall, to sink.             |
| <i>Dégénérer</i>   | to degenerate, to deteriorate.             |
| <i>Demeurer</i>    | to stop, to live;—to remain.               |
| <i>Descendre</i>   | to go down, to descend.                    |
| <i>Disparaître</i> | to disappear.                              |
| <i>Echapper</i>    | to escape, to slip off, to run away.       |
| <i>Echouer</i>     | to founder, to fail (to stop), (maritime). |
| <i>Embellir</i>    | to embellish, to improve.                  |
| <i>Empirer</i>     | to grow worse.                             |
| <i>Expirer</i>     | to die;—to cease, to run out (lease).      |
| <i>Grandir</i>     | to grow, to increase.                      |
| <i>Partir</i>      | to go away, to set out.                    |
| <i>Passer</i>      | to pass, to cross over, go over.           |
| <i>Rester</i>      | to stop, to remain.                        |

§ 218. **Repartir and répartir.**

*Repartir*, to set out again, a compound of *partir*, to set out, is like *sentir*; but *répartir*, to divide or distribute (from the obsolete verb *partir*, to divide), is like *finir*:—

*Il repartait quand je suis arrivé.*  
*Ces adjectifs se répartissent en deux ou trois classes.*

Similarly, *ressortir*, to go out again, is like *sortir*; but *ressortir* (to be in the jurisdiction of) is like *finir*.

§ 219. **Use of Accent or Double Consonant in Tonic Syllable (§ 203).**

The only living (§ 206) modes of strengthening the tonic syllables are (a) the addition of a grave accent, (b) the addition of a second consonant.

The verbs in *-eler*, *-eter*, in which it is usual to employ an accent instead of doubling the consonant, are :

|                  |               |                  |                |
|------------------|---------------|------------------|----------------|
| <i>celer</i>     | (to) conceal  | <i>marteler</i>  | (to) hammer    |
| <i>déceler</i>   | (to) disclose | <i>modeler</i>   | (to) model     |
| <i>écarteler</i> | (to) quarter  | <i>peler</i>     | (to) peel      |
| <i>étiqueter</i> | (to) label    | <i>acheter</i>   | (to) buy       |
| <i>geler</i>     | (to) freeze   | <i>racheter</i>  | (to) buy again |
| <i>harceler</i>  | (to) harass   | <i>becqueter</i> | (to) peck      |

§ 220. **Mettre (strong).**

*Mis* : Only a few verbs have *s* in the Past Participle :

|                 |                |                       |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| <i>mettre</i>   | <i>mis</i>     | ( <i>missus</i> )     |
| <i>acquérir</i> | <i>acquis</i>  | ( <i>acquisitus</i> ) |
| <i>prendre</i>  | <i>pris</i>    | ( <i>prensus</i> )    |
| <i>asseoir</i>  | <i>assis</i>   | ( <i>assessus</i> )   |
| <i>clore</i>    | <i>clos</i> }  | (clausus)             |
| <i>éclore</i>   | <i>éclos</i> } |                       |

§ 221. Verbs in *-aître* and *-ôître* (strong verbs).

There are five series of verbs in *-aître* and *-ôître*.

1. *connaître* and compounds (*cognoscere*).
2. *paraître* and compounds (*parere* through L.L. *parescere*).
3. *croître* and compounds (*crescere*).
4. *naître* and compounds (*nasci* through L.L. *nascere*).
5. *paître* and compounds (*pascere*).

They differ in various respects :

(a) *Use of the circumflex accent :*

The circumflex accent has in each verb arisen from the same cause ; viz., the omission of *s*. But its use is irregular :—

1. *Connaître*, *paraître*, *paître*, are alike throughout in the use of accent.

|            |           |         |
|------------|-----------|---------|
| connaître  | paraître  | paître  |
| connaîtrai | paraîtrai | paîtrai |
| connait    | il paraît | il paît |

2. *Croître* employs the circumflex accent in several places where *paraître* and *connaître* do not employ it. The main object is doubtless to prevent any confusion between its forms and those of *croire*.

|          |          |
|----------|----------|
| je crois | je crois |
| tu crois | tu crois |
| je crûs  | je crus  |
| crû      | cru      |

3. *Naître* employs the accent in Present Infinitive, Future Indicative, and Present Conditional only, and not in Present Indicative : *naître*, *je naîtrai*, *je naîtrais*, but *il nait*, not *il naît*.

(β) *Connaître* and *paraître* have rejected the older spelling in *oi* : *croître* still retains it.

(γ) *Paître* is defective. It has no Past Simple tense, nor has it a Past Participle in its ordinary sense, *to graze*. *Pu* is employed in falconry only : *le faucon a pu* – feasted upon. *Repaitre* is not defective, and follows *connaître* in its conjugation.

§ 222. Verbs in *-uire*.

(a) There are four series of verbs in *-uire*.

1. *duire* and its compounds *conduire*, *déduire*, *réduire*, *traduire*, *produire*, *introduire*, which have a common origin, *ducère*.
2. *Cuire* from *coquère*.
3. The compounds of *struire* (itself not used) from *struère*: *construire*, *instruire*, *détruire*.
4. *Luire*, *nuire*, from *lucère*, *nocère*, through L.L. *lucère*, *nocère*.

(β) The Past Participle is their only point of difference: *lui*, *nui*, but *conduit*, *cuit*, *construit*, etc. Compare *confit* and *suffi*, *conclu* and *clos*, etc.

(γ) The *s* of *conduisant*, *luisant*, *nuisant*, is the *c* of the Latin. The *s* of *instruisant* has been inserted by false analogy.

(δ) *Duire* is almost obsolete. It occurs in the sense of *trained*, etc. *Ane bien duit*. It is more often impersonal. *Il me duit* = *Il me convient*, it suits me.

§ 223. *Peindre*, *plaindre*, *joindre*, etc. (weak verbs).

Verbs in *-eindre*, *-aindre*, *-oindre*, differ in various particulars from other verbs in *-ndre*. This difference is for the most part traceable to the Latin.

1. *Vendre*, *tendre*, etc., are from Latin *vendēre*, *tendēre*; in them the *d* is a part of the root, and persists throughout the verb.
2. *Peindre*, *éteindre*, *joindre*, etc., are from Latin *pingēre*, *extinguēre*, *jungēre*, etc. In them the *d* has only been inserted between the two liquids for strength,\* and is no part of the root.
3. The stem of the *vendre* series has maintained its root consonant *d* throughout the verb; that of the *peindre* series returns to the root consonant *g* of the Latin in the following parts:—*peignant*, *peignais*, *peigne*.
4. *Vendre* has a weak Past Participle, *vendu*; but *peindre* has a strong Past Participle, *peint* (*pinctus*).

---

\* Compare (French) *étale*, *échelle*, *épée*, *estimer*, *estomac*, *espace*, *escalier*. Other examples of a similar insertion of *d* between *n* and *r* are: *cendre*, *gendre*, *moindre*, *pondre*, *tendre*, *vendredi*, *tiendrai*, *viendrai*. Compare *moudre*, *réoudre*, *voudrai*, *vaudrai*, *faudrai*, etc.

§ 224. **Courir** (strong verb).

*Je courrai*: *Courir* is from *currere*, through *currere*. The strong infinitive *courre*, from *currere*, was in common use till the seventeenth century.

We have of this strong infinitive :

(a) The phrase *courre le cerf* (to hunt the stag).

(b) The Future Indicative and Present Conditional, *je courrai*, *je courrais*.

§ 225. **Devoir, recevoir, concevoir, etc.** (strong verbs).

The first thing to be noticed in these verbs is, that the usual mode of speaking of them as verbs ending in *-voir*, is wrong. The *ev* is a part of the stem, and does not belong to the ending any more than *av* in *avoir*, *savoir*, etc. This once understood, the rest is easy enough. There are two series of verbs :

1. *Devoir* and *redevoir* regularly obtained from *debēre*.

2. *Recevoir* from *recipere*, through *recipere*  
*concevoir*      *concipere*      *concipere*  
*decevoir*      *decipere*      *decipere*  
*percevoir*      *percipere*      *percipere*  
*apercevoir*, a compound of *percevoir*.

In all these verbs may be seen the common strengthening of the *e* into *oi* when it bears the tonic accent.

|         |          |           |
|---------|----------|-----------|
| dois    | doive    | devoir    |
| reçois  | reçoive  | recevoir  |
| conçois | conçoive | concevoir |

In Old French, *reçoivre*, *aperçoivre*, etc., regularly derived from the Latin, often occur.



§ 226. **Envoyer, renvoyer and dévoyer, fourvoyer, louvoyer, convoier** (weak verbs).

*Envoyer*, to send, *renvoyer*, send away again, make *j'enverrai, je renverrai*.

*Dévoyer*, to place the wrong way, *fourvoyer*, to mislead, *louvoyer*, to tack, *convoier*, to convey, make *dévoierai, fourvoierai, louvoierai, convoierai*.

§ 227. **Dire** (strong verb), *dicere*.

(a) *Dire, redire and contredire, médire, dédire*.

(β) *Maudire*.

(γ) *Bénir*.

(a) The difference between *dire, redire* and *contredire, médire, dédire*, is small.

In the two former we have still *dites* from *dicitis*, like *faites* from *facitis*.

But *contredire, médire, dédire*, make *contredisez, médisez, dédisez*, after the model of the first person, which has cast off the Latin.

(β) *Maudire* (= *mal-dire*) has wandered still further from *dire*; it has assumed *ss* like *finir*, instead of *s*: *maudissant, maudissions, maudissais, maudisse*, etc.

(γ) The verb *bénir*, from *benedicere*, has changed still more: it follows *finir* throughout.

In *bénit*, one of the two participles in use, we see the connecting link. The distinction between *béni* and *bénit* is now this:

*Béni* = *blessed*

*bénit* = *consecrated*.

## CHAPTER IV.—ADVERBS.

## § 228. Adverbs of Time.

|               |                          |                |                          |
|---------------|--------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| quand         | <i>when</i>              | quelquefois    | <i>sometimes</i>         |
| demain        | <i>to-morrow</i>         | tout à l'heure | <i>presently</i>         |
| hier          | <i>yesterday</i>         | avant          | <i>before</i>            |
| avant-hier    | <i>the day before</i>    | ce matin       | <i>this morning</i>      |
|               | <i>yesterday</i>         | ce soir        | <i>this evening</i>      |
| lors          | <i>then</i>              | de bonne heure | <i>early</i>             |
| alors         |                          | de meilleure   | <i>earlier</i>           |
| puis          |                          | heure          |                          |
| dès lors      | <i>from that time</i>    | aussitôt       | <i>immediately</i>       |
| déjà          | <i>already</i>           | sur-le-champ   |                          |
| après         | <i>afterwards</i>        | tout de suite  |                          |
| ensuite       |                          | longtemps      | <i>a long time</i>       |
| enfin         | <i>at length</i>         | aujourd'hui    | <i>to-day</i>            |
| toujours      | <i>always</i>            | auparavant     | <i>before</i>            |
| tôt           | <i>soon</i>              | parfois        | <i>sometimes</i>         |
| bientôt       |                          | en même temps  | <i>at the same time</i>  |
| plus tôt      | <i>sooner</i>            | dernièrement   | <i>lately</i>            |
| tantôt        | <i>by-and-by</i>         | désormais      | <i>henceforth</i>        |
| tard          | <i>late</i>              | dorénavant     |                          |
| tôt ou tard   | <i>sooner or later</i>   | présentement   | <i>now</i>               |
| tout de suite | <i>immediately</i>       | à présent      |                          |
| tandis        | <i>whilst</i>            | maintenant     |                          |
| depuis        | <i>since</i>             | actuellement   | <i>at this very time</i> |
| souvent       | <i>often</i>             | jamais         | <i>ever</i>              |
| encore        | <i>still, again, yet</i> | ne . . jamais  | <i>never</i>             |
| naguère       | <i>formerly</i>          | à jamais       | <i>for ever</i>          |
| jadis         |                          | toujours       |                          |
| autrefois     |                          | pour toujours  |                          |

*etc., etc.*

## § 229. Adverbs of Place.

|           |                                 |               |                       |
|-----------|---------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| où        | <i>where</i>                    | dessous       | } <i>under</i>        |
| y         | } <i>there</i>                  | en dessous    |                       |
| là        |                                 | dehors        | } <i>outside</i>      |
| ici       | <i>here</i>                     | au dehors     |                       |
| près      | <i>near</i>                     | en dehors     | } <i>inside</i>       |
| auprès    | } <i>near</i>                   | dedans        |                       |
| ici près  |                                 | au dedans     | } <i>before</i>       |
| proche    |                                 | en dedans     |                       |
| loin      | <i>far</i>                      | devant        | } <i>behind</i>       |
| d'où      | <i>whence</i>                   | par-devant    |                       |
| en        | } <i>hence</i><br><i>thence</i> | derrière      | } <i>elsewhere</i>    |
| d'ici     |                                 | par-dérrière  |                       |
| par ici   | <i>from here, hence</i>         | autre part    | <i>backward</i>       |
| par là    | <i>this way</i>                 | en arrière    | <i>forward</i>        |
| ailleurs  | <i>that way</i>                 | en avant      | <i>everywhere</i>     |
| là-bas    | <i>elsewhere</i>                | partout       | <i>here and there</i> |
| en haut   | <i>yonder</i>                   | çà et là      | <i>up and down</i>    |
| en bas    | <i>above</i>                    | deçà et delà  | <i>on that side</i>   |
| à droite  | <i>below</i>                    | delà, au delà | } <i>around</i>       |
| à gauche  | <i>on the right</i>             | alentour      |                       |
| à côté    | <i>on the left</i>              | tout autour   | } <i>nowhere</i>      |
| dessus    | <i>by the side of</i>           | nulle part    |                       |
| en dessus | } <i>above</i>                  | là dedans     | <i>within</i>         |
|           |                                 | jusqu'où      | <i>how far</i>        |

*etc., etc.*

## § 230. Adverbs of Number.

|               |                   |              |                        |
|---------------|-------------------|--------------|------------------------|
| premièrement  | <i>first</i>      | sixièmement  | <i>sixthly</i>         |
| deuxièmement  | } <i>secondly</i> | septièmement | <i>seventhly</i>       |
| secondement   |                   | une fois     | <i>once</i>            |
| troisièmement | <i>thirdly</i>    | deux fois    | <i>twice</i>           |
| quatrièmement | <i>fourthly</i>   | trois fois   | <i>three times</i>     |
| cinquièmement | <i>fifthly</i>    | cent fois    | <i>a hundred times</i> |

*etc., etc.*

## § 231. Adverbs of Quality and Manner, etc.

|                |                    |              |                      |
|----------------|--------------------|--------------|----------------------|
| comme          | <i>as</i>          | très         | } <i>very</i>        |
| comment        | <i>how</i>         | fort         |                      |
| combien        | <i>how much</i>    | tout à fait  | <i>quite</i>         |
| beaucoup       | <i>much</i>        | environ      | } <i>about</i>       |
| plus           | } <i>more</i>      | à peu près   |                      |
| davantage      |                    | ainsi        | <i>thus</i>          |
| ne . . . guère | <i>not much</i>    | aussi        | <i>also</i>          |
| trop           | <i>too much</i>    | également    | <i>equally</i>       |
| tant           | <i>so much,</i>    | plutôt       | <i>rather</i>        |
|                | <i>so many</i>     | au plus      | } <i>at the most</i> |
| autant         | <i>as much</i>     | tout au plus |                      |
|                | <i>as many</i>     | au moins     | <i>at the least</i>  |
| si             | <i>so, so much</i> | seulement    | } <i>only</i>        |
| assez          | <i>enough</i>      | ne . . . que |                      |
| peu            | <i>little</i>      | même         | <i>even</i>          |
| moins          | <i>less</i>        | volontiers   | <i>willingly</i>     |
| presque        | <i>almost</i>      | à dessein,   | } <i>on purpose</i>  |
| bien           | <i>well</i>        | exprès       |                      |
| mal            | <i>badly</i>       | par hasard   | <i>accidentally</i>  |
| à bon marché   | <i>cheaply</i>     | tout à coup  | <i>suddenly</i>      |
| pêle-mêle      | <i>confusedly</i>  |              |                      |

*etc., etc.*

## § 232. Adverbs of Affirmation and Negation.

|              |                      |                      |                         |
|--------------|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| oui          | } <i>yes</i>         | non                  | <i>no</i>               |
| si           |                      | ne                   | <i>not</i>              |
| certes       | } <i>certainly</i>   | nullement            | <i>by no means</i>      |
| certainement |                      | ne . . . pas (§ 235) | <i>not</i>              |
| assurément   |                      | ne . . . point       | <i>not (not at all)</i> |
| vraiment     | <i>truly</i>         | ne . . . rien        | <i>nothing</i>          |
| sans doute   | <i>without doubt</i> | ne . . . jamais      | <i>never</i>            |
| peut-être    | <i>perhaps</i>       | ne . . . plus        | <i>no more</i>          |

*etc., etc.*

## § 233. Formation of Adverbs.

A. Adverbs have been obtained from Latin particles, sometimes with, sometimes without, composition with other particles, etc. : *où, loin, tandis, souvent, donc, mieux, non, ne, là, quand, y, hier, mal, ici, devant, demain, derrière, dessous, depuis, dessus, assez, ensemble, etc.* \*

B. Adverbs have been obtained from nouns and adjectives:

i. Adverbs obtained from oblique case (mostly accusative) of nouns or of adjectives, without preposition :

(1) *Bas, bon, chaud, clair, exprès, haut, mauvais, seul, vite, bref, faux, vrai.*

(2) *Moult* (old), *peu, trop.*

(3) *Encore, lors.*

ii. Adverbs obtained from oblique cases of nouns and adjectives with accompanying prepositions—mostly *de, à, en, par* :

*de côté, de jour, davantage (d'avantage), d'accord, etc.*

*à présent, à droite, à gauche, à l'anglaise, à l'avenir, à côté, à peine, à midi, à l'instant, alors, aval, à reculons, etc. environ, en vain, en face, en retard, en vérité, ensuite, etc. parmi, parfois, etc.*

iii. Adverbs formed by repetition of nouns : *côte-à-côte, tête-à-tête, vis-à-vis, etc.*

C. Adverbs have been obtained by composition of feminine adjectives with *-ment*. This suffix has its origin in *mente* (with a mind), the ablative case of the Latin feminine substantive *mens*. This is the only living mode of forming adverbs.

*premier*

*heureux*

*doux*

*attentif*

*premièrement*

*heureusement*

*doucement*

*attentivement*

*etc., etc.*

*Special Rules and Exceptions.*

(a) Adjectives in *-ant* and *-ent* \* form their adverbs in *-amment* and *-emment* respectively: as, *constant, constamment; évident, évidemment.*

(β) Adjectives in *i; u, é*, now drop the *e* mute of the feminine: thus *vrai* makes *vraiment; absolu, absolument; modéré, modérément.*

But *beau, nouveau, fou, mou* (§ 87), regularly form their corresponding adverbs from the feminines *belle, nouvelle, folle, molle*. *Gai* still makes *gaiement* or *gaîment*; *dû* makes *dûment*; *assidu, assidûment; impuni* makes *impunément.*

(γ) *Traîtreusement* (treacherously), *gentiment* (prettily), *brèvement* (briefly), are anomalous forms.

(δ) The following Adjectives now take an acute accent over the final *e* when *-ment* is added:—

|           |                    |               |                      |
|-----------|--------------------|---------------|----------------------|
| commode   | <i>easy</i>        | commodément†  | <i>easily</i>        |
| conforme  | <i>suitable</i>    | conformément  | <i>suitably</i>      |
| aveugle   | <i>blind</i>       | aveuglement‡  | <i>blindly</i>       |
| énorme    | <i>enormous</i>    | énormément    | <i>enormously</i>    |
| immense   | <i>immense</i>     | immensément   | <i>immensely</i>     |
| opiniâtre | <i>obstinate</i>   | opiniâtrément | <i>obstinately</i>   |
| uniforme  | <i>uniform</i>     | uniformément  | <i>uniformly</i>     |
| commun    | <i>common</i>      | communément   | <i>commonly</i>      |
| confus    | <i>confused</i>    | confusément   | <i>confusedly</i>    |
| obscur    | <i>obscure</i>     | obscurément   | <i>obscurely</i>     |
| précis    | <i>precise</i>     | précisément   | <i>precisely</i>     |
| profond   | <i>profound</i>    | profondément  | <i>profoundly</i>    |
| importun  | <i>importunate</i> | importunément | <i>importunately</i> |
| exprès    | <i>express</i>     | expressément  | <i>expressly</i>     |

\* But *lent*, *slow*, and *présent*, follow the general rule.

† These must not be confused with such words as *assurément* from *assuré, assurée*, where the *e* of the feminine has dropped out.

‡ *Avoulement* = *blindness*.

## § 234. Comparison of Adverbs.

Some Adverbs admit of degrees of comparison. Like Adjectives, they are compared by the help of **plus** or **moins** :

|                  |                        |                           |
|------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>doucement</i> | <i>plus doucement</i>  | <i>le plus doucement</i>  |
|                  | <i>moins doucement</i> | <i>le moins doucement</i> |

The following Adverbs are anomalous. (Compare adjectives.)

|                 |               |              |                 |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------|-----------------|
| <i>beaucoup</i> | <i>much</i>   | <i>plus</i>  | <i>le plus</i>  |
| <i>mal</i>      | <i>badly</i>  | <i>pis</i>   | <i>le pis</i>   |
| <i>peu</i>      | <i>little</i> | <i>moins</i> | <i>le moins</i> |
| <i>bien</i>     | <i>well</i>   | <i>mieux</i> | <i>le mieux</i> |

## NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

## § 235. Negation.

In Latin, *ne* is essentially the negative particle, all other negatives contain it : *nullus, neque, nec, neuter, non, nisi, nihil, nunquam, nemo, nusquam, nolo*, etc.

The French *ne*, obtained from Latin *non*, is similarly the particle to the influence of which all negatives can be traced ; unless we except *ni, nul, non*, which are derived directly from Latin *nec, nullus, non*.\*

If such words as *pas, point, personne, rien, jamais*, etc., have any negative force, it is only by long association with *ne*, and by being constantly added to strengthen it. They are by nature affirmative, and can regain their affirmative meaning. Moreover, negation can be expressed by *ne* only.

|                           |                       |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>pas, a step</i>        | Lat. <i>passus</i>    |
| <i>point, a point</i>     | „ <i>punctum</i>      |
| <i>rien, a thing</i>      | „ <i>rem</i>          |
| <i>personne, a person</i> | „ <i>persona</i>      |
| <i>goutte, a drop</i>     | „ <i>gutta</i>        |
| <i>mie (old), a crumb</i> | „ <i>mica</i>         |
| <i>jamais, ever</i>       | „ <i>jam magis</i>    |
| <i>aucun, some one</i>    | „ <i>aliquis unus</i> |

Compare English, *not a jot, not a bit*, etc., *not to care a straw, not to care a button*, etc.

\* Compare English *none, naught, nor, neither, never*, etc., in which the Old English *ne* also enters.

## CHAPTER V.—PREPOSITIONS.

Many words are Adverbs or Prepositions according to use. Many Prepositions, with *que* added, form Conjunctions.

§ 236. Prepositions which may be said to govern the Accusative :

|                  |                            |                     |                        |
|------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| <i>à</i>         | <i>to, at</i>              | <i>malgré</i>       | <i>in spite of</i>     |
| <i>après</i>     | <i>after</i>               | <i>moyennant</i>    | <i>by means of</i>     |
| <i>à travers</i> | <i>through</i>             | <i>nonobstant</i>   | <i>notwithstanding</i> |
| <i>attenant</i>  | <i>close to</i>            | <i>outré</i>        | <i>besides</i>         |
| <i>attendu</i>   | <i>in consideration of</i> | <i>par</i>          | <i>by</i>              |
| <i>avant</i>     | <i>before</i>              | <i>par-delà</i>     | <i>beyond</i>          |
| <i>avec</i>      | <i>with</i>                | <i>par-deçà</i>     | <i>on this side</i>    |
| <i>chez</i>      | <i>at the house of</i>     | <i>par-dessus</i>   | <i>over</i>            |
| <i>contre</i>    | <i>against</i>             | <i>par-dessous</i>  | <i>under</i>           |
| <i>dans</i>      | <i>in</i>                  | <i>par-devant</i>   | <i>before</i>          |
| <i>depuis</i>    | <i>since</i>               | <i>par-derrière</i> | <i>behind</i>          |
| <i>derrière</i>  | <i>behind</i>              | <i>parmi</i>        | <i>among</i>           |
| <i>dès</i>       | <i>from</i>                | <i>pendant</i>      | <i>during</i>          |
| <i>devant</i>    | <i>before</i>              | <i>pour</i>         | <i>for</i>             |
| <i>durant</i>    | <i>during</i>              | <i>proche</i>       | <i>near</i>            |
| <i>derrière</i>  | <i>behind</i>              | <i>sans</i>         | <i>without</i>         |
| <i>en</i>        | <i>in</i>                  | <i>sauf</i>         | <i>save</i>            |
| <i>entre</i>     | <i>between</i>             | <i>selon</i>        | <i>according to</i>    |
| <i>envers</i>    | <i>towards</i>             | <i>sous</i>         | <i>under</i>           |
| <i>environ</i>   | <i>about</i>               | <i>suivant</i>      | <i>according to</i>    |
| <i>excepté</i>   | } <i>except</i>            | <i>supposé</i>      | <i>supposing</i>       |
| <i>(fors)</i>    |                            | <i>sur</i>          | <i>upon</i>            |
| <i>hormis</i>    |                            | <i>touchant</i>     | <i>concerning</i>      |
| <i>hors</i>      | <i>outside</i>             | <i>vers</i>         | <i>towards</i>         |

*etc., etc.*



§ 237. Prepositional expressions which may be said to govern the Genitive :

|                 |                                 |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| (a.) à cause de | <i>on account of</i>            |
| à côté de       | <i>by the side of</i>           |
| à défaut de     | <i>in the place of</i>          |
| à force de      | <i>by dint of</i>               |
| à la faveur de  | <i>by means of</i>              |
| à la manière de | <i>in the manner of</i>         |
| à la mode de    | <i>after the fashion of</i>     |
| à la merci de   | <i>at the mercy of</i>          |
| au deçà de      | <i>on this side of</i>          |
| au défaut de    | <i>in the place of</i>          |
| au delà de      | <i>on that side of</i>          |
| au dessus de    | <i>upon, on the top of</i>      |
| au devant de    | <i>before, in front of</i>      |
| au lieu de      | <i>instead of</i>               |
| au milieu de    | <i>in the middle of</i>         |
| au moyen de     | <i>by means of</i>              |
| au niveau de    | <i>even to, at the level of</i> |
| au péril de     | <i>at the peril of</i>          |
| au prix de      | <i>at the price of</i>          |
| au risque de    | <i>at the risk of</i>           |
| au dépens de    | <i>at the expense of</i>        |
| en deçà de      | <i>on this side of</i>          |
| en dépit de     | <i>in spite of</i>              |
| en faveur de    | <i>by favour of</i>             |
| en présence de  | <i>in presence of</i>           |
| faute de        | <i>for want of</i>              |
| hors de         | <i>out of</i>                   |
| pour l'amour de | <i>for the sake of</i>          |
|                 | <i>etc., etc.</i>               |

|                   |                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| (β.) à couvert de | <i>secure from</i>    |
| à l'abri de       | <i>sheltered from</i> |
| loin de           | <i>far from</i>       |
|                   | <i>etc., etc.</i>     |

|                   |                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| (γ.) à l'égard de | <i>with regard to</i> |
| à l'insu de       | <i>unknown to</i>     |
| à rebours de      | <i>contrary to</i>    |
| tout auprès de    | <i>close to</i>       |
| vis-à-vis de      | <i>opposite to</i>    |
|                   | <i>etc., etc.</i>     |

|                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| (δ.) à l'exception de | <i>except</i>         |
| à l'exclusion de      | <i>excepting</i>      |
| à la réserve de       | <i>except</i>         |
| au dedans de          | <i>within</i>         |
| au dehors de          | <i>without</i>        |
| au dessous de         | <i>under</i>          |
| auprès de             | <i>near</i>           |
| autour de             | <i>around</i>         |
| au travers de         | <i>through</i>        |
| aux environs de       | <i>round about</i>    |
| le long de            | <i>along</i>          |
| près de               | <i>near</i>           |
| à la réserve de       | <i>excepting that</i> |
|                       | <i>etc., etc.</i>     |

### § 238. Formation of Prepositions.

Prepositions, like Adverbs, have been obtained from various sources :

1. Directly from Latin Prepositions, sometimes without composition : *sans, pour, entre, en, sur, de, à, par*, etc. ; sometimes with composition : *dans, depuis, avant, parmi, dès, derrière, dessus, dessous*, etc., etc.

2. From oblique cases of Nouns and Adjectives : sometimes with, sometimes without, composition with *de, à*, etc. : *chez, malgré, vis-à-vis, sauf, loin de, au dedans de, vis-à-vis de*, etc.

3. From French Nouns and Adjectives : *au lieu de, au bas de, à cause de, le long de, en faveur de, à la merci de*, etc., etc.

4. From the Imperative Mood : *voici, voilà*.

5. From the Past Participle used absolutely : *excepté, attendu, vu, hormis*.

6. From the Present Participle used absolutely : *touchant, pendant, suivant, moyennant, nonobstant*.

## CHAPTER VI.—CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 239. Conjunctions are of two kinds :

1. *Co-ordinate*, which join words and sentences, but do not influence mood.

2. *Subordinate*, which join sentences and do influence mood.

§ 240. The Co-ordinate Conjunctions are—

|                                 |                         |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| et                              | and                     |
| mais                            | but                     |
| et . . . et                     | both . . . and          |
| ou . . . ou                     | either . . . or         |
| ni . . . ni                     | neither . . . nor       |
| non seulement . . . mais encore | not only . . . but also |
| néanmoins }                     | nevertheless            |
| cependant }                     |                         |
| car                             | for                     |
|                                 | <i>etc., etc.</i>       |

§ 241. The Subordinate Conjunctions are conveniently divided into *Conditional, Concessive, Consecutive, Final, Temporal, Causal, Comparative*. Most of these may be again divided into those with which the Indicative or Conditional is usual, and those with which the Subjunctive is usual. (See *Uses of Moods in Syntax*.)

## CONDITIONAL.

*Indicative Mood.*

à condition que, *on condition that*    sinon que, *if not that*  
si, *if*

*Subjunctive Mood.*

|                                    |                                    |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| a moins que, <i>unless</i>         | pourvu que, <i>provided that</i>   |
| en cas que, <i>in case that</i>    | au cas que, <i>in case that</i>    |
| soit que, <i>whether</i>           | supposé que, <i>supposing that</i> |
| si (before auxiliaries), <i>if</i> | pour peu que, <i>provided that</i> |

## CONCESSIVE.

*Subjunctive Mood.*

|                                     |                                   |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| nonobstant que, <i>although</i>     | quoique, <i>although</i>          |
| bien que, <i>although</i>           | encore que, <i>even though</i>    |
| pour peu que, <i>however little</i> | si peu que, <i>however little</i> |

## CONSECUTIVE.

*Indicative Mood.*

|                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| que, <i>that</i>             | de manière que, <i>so that</i> |
| de sorte que, <i>so that</i> |                                |

*Subjunctive Mood.*

|                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| de manière que, <i>so that</i> | de sorte que, <i>so that</i> |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|

## FINAL.

*Subjunctive Mood.*

|                                   |                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| pour que, <i>in order that</i>    | afin que, <i>in order that</i> |
| de peur que, <i>for fear that</i> | de crainte que, <i>lest</i>    |
| que, <i>that</i>                  |                                |

## TEMPORAL.

*Indicative Mood.*

|                                      |                                 |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| après que, <i>after that</i>         | aussitôt que, <i>as soon as</i> |
| dès que, <i>from the moment that</i> | d'abord que, <i>as soon as</i>  |
| depuis que, <i>since</i>             | lorsque, <i>when</i>            |
| quand, <i>when</i>                   | pendant que, <i>while</i>       |
| tandis que, <i>whilst</i>            | tant que, <i>as long as</i>     |

*Subjunctive Mood.*

|                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| avant que, <i>before that</i>  | jusqu'à ce que, <i>until</i> |
| en attendant que, <i>until</i> |                              |

## CAUSAL.

*Indicative Mood.*

|                                   |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| à cause que, <i>on account of</i> | parce que, <i>because</i>        |
| attendu que, <i>seeing that</i>   | d'autant que, <i>inasmuch as</i> |
| puisque, <i>since</i>             | comme, <i>as</i>                 |
| vu que, <i>seeing that</i>        |                                  |

---

\* Some Conjunctions take the Infinitive with *de*, but this depends upon construction.

## COMPARATIVE.

*Indicative Mood.*

|                                         |                                       |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| ainsi que, <i>as well as</i>            | ainsi que, <i>as</i>                  |
| de même que, <i>as, in the same way</i> | à mesure que, <i>in proportion as</i> |
| autant que, <i>as much as</i>           | au lieu que, <i>instead of</i>        |
| comme si, <i>as if</i>                  | suivant que, <i>in consequence of</i> |
| selon que, <i>according as</i>          |                                       |

## CHAPTER VII.—INTERJECTIONS.

§ 242. Interjections, as the name implies, are words *thrown into* a sentence without influencing its construction. They express—

Grief : *hélas ! aie ! oh ! etc.*

Joy : *ah ! bon ! hurrah ! etc.*

Surprise : *ah ! oh ! hem ! etc.*

Doubt : *bah !*

Disgust : *fi ! fi donc ! pouh !*

Silence : *chut ! st !*

Laughter : *ah, ah ! hi, hi ! oh, oh !*

*etc., etc.*

Various nouns, verbs, adverbs, etc., are employed as Interjections :

|                                         |                                     |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| bien ! à la bonne heure ! bravo !       | <i>well done ! all right !</i>      |
| allons ! courage ! en avant !           | <i>come ! cheer up ! forwards !</i> |
| ciel ! miséricorde !                    | <i>O heavens ! mercy !</i>          |
| au feu ! au secours ! au voleur !       | <i>fire ! help ! stop thief !</i>   |
| tiens ! quoi ! vraiment ! par exemple ! | <i>here ! what ! indeed !</i>       |
| gare !                                  | <i>mind ! look out !</i>            |
| silence ! paix !                        | <i>be quiet ! silence ! hush !</i>  |

*etc., etc.*

BOOK III.—SYNTAX.

---

§ 243. Syntax treats of sentences.

1. A sentence is simple or compound.

A simple sentence expresses but one thought, and has but one finite verb.

2. Two parts are necessary to every simple sentence :

A grammatical subject, of which something is said (predicated) ;

A grammatical predicate, which says (predicates) something of the subject.

All other words found in the simple sentence are only extensions of either the grammatical subject or of the grammatical predicate.

3. A compound sentence consists of two or more simple sentences.

Of these, one is the principal sentence, the others are co-ordinate or subordinate.

A co-ordinate sentence depends for its complete sense upon the principal sentence, but is not dependent upon it for its *construction*. A subordinate sentence depends upon the principal sentence, both for its complete sense and for its *construction*.

## CHAPTER I.—AGREEMENT.

## FIRST CONCORD: THE VERB AND ITS SUBJECT.

## § 244. General Rule.

The Verb agrees with its Subject \* in number and person :

|                       |                 |
|-----------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Je parlerai</i>    | I shall speak   |
| <i>Tu parleras</i>    | Thou wilt speak |
| <i>Il parlera</i>     | He will speak   |
| <i>Nous parlerons</i> | We shall speak  |
| <i>Vous parlerez</i>  | You will speak  |
| <i>Ils parleront</i>  | They will speak |

*On éleva une chapelle en commémoration de cet événement.* They raised a chapel in commemoration of this event. (PASCAL.)

*Je viens à vous ; car enfin aujourd'hui si vous m'abandonnez, quel sera mon appui ?* I come to you ; for in short, if now you abandon me, what will be my help ?

(RACINE.)

## § 245. Special Rules.

(a) Two or more singular subjects equal one in the plural, and require a plural verb.

*Patience et longueur de temps  
Font plus que force ni que rage.*

(LA FONTAINE.)

(b) If the persons differ, the verb agrees with the first person rather than with the second, and with the second rather than with the third. A pronoun in direct agreement with the verb is often added :

*Lui et nous sommes d'accord.*  
He and we are agreed.

---

\* When not otherwise stated, grammatical or word subject, and grammatical or word object, are always meant.

*Vous et moi partirons demain.*

*You and I will set out to-morrow.*

*Vous et votre père, vous vous portez bien ?*

*You and your father are well ?*

*Toi et lui, vous êtes d'accord.*

*Thou and he are agreed.*

## SECOND CONCORD: THE ADJECTIVE AND ITS NOUN.

### § 246. General Rule.

An Adjective agrees with that to which it is in attribution. This is true,

(a) Whether the Adjective is qualificative: *bon père, bonne mère, bons pères, bonnes mères*; or determinative: *ce père, cette mère, ces pères, ces mères*.

(b) Whether the Adjective is an epithet: *le bon père, la bonne mère*; or a complement: *le père est bon, la mère est bonne*.

(c) Whether the Adjective is an ordinary Adjective: *un beau jardin, une belle ville, le jardin est beau, la ville est belle*; or a participial Adjective: *un jardin cultivé, un bruit effrayant, le jardin est cultivé, le bruit est effrayant, une terre cultivée, la chaleur est effrayante*.

(d) Whether the Adjective is in the Positive, Comparative, or Superlative degree: *une bonne maison, une meilleure maison, la meilleure maison*.

### § 247. Special Rules.

1. Two or more singular Substantives (or their equivalents) equal one in the plural, and require the Adjective in the plural.

*Du pain et du vin excellents.*

*La viande et la moutarde sont gâtées.*

2. If the genders differ, the Adjective is put in the masculine. The masculine Noun is generally put near the Adjective:

*De la viande et du pain excellents.*



### § 248. Agreement of the Present Participle.\*

In French, the following rules are now observed in regard to the agreement of the Present Participle :—

1. If the Present Participle is more adjective than verb, it agrees like an adjective : Une lionne *vivante*, a living lioness.†

2. If the Present Participle is more verb than adjective, it does *not* agree : Une lionne *tremblant* de fureur, a lioness trembling with fury.

### § 249. Agreement of the Past Participle.

The Past Participle has *three* uses. In two of these uses it differs in no respect from an ordinary adjective. The examples already given will illustrate this sufficiently. Its third use needs detailed explanation. It is necessary to have a right understanding of what is meant by *active* and *passive*, *transitive* and *intransitive*, *direct object*, etc.

1. A Verb is said to be in the *active* voice when its subject is *active*, *i.e.* does something : the woman killed the lioness ; the woman killed herself ; the woman spoke.

An Active Verb is said to be *transitive* when the action takes effect upon something called the Direct Object : ‡ the woman killed *the lioness*.

An Active Transitive Verb is called *reflexive* when its Subject and its Direct Object are one : the woman killed *herself*.

An Active Verb is said to be *intransitive* when the action does not take effect upon something : the woman spoke.

\* A Participle, as its name implies, is partly a verb, partly an adjective.

† *Approchant, appartenant, dépendant, descendant, existant, participant, prétendant, ressemblant, résultant, séant, subsistant, tendant*, agree more often than other participles. The reason is not apparent, unless it be the example set by some well-known authors (*Student's French Grammar*, § 457).

‡ See note, p. 146.

A Verb is said to be in the Passive Voice when its Subject is *passive*, *i.e.* does nothing: the lioness was killed by the woman.

2. The Direct Object in French usually follows the verb; sometimes it precedes the verb. *L'homme a tué le lion*, the man has killed the lion. *L'homme l'a tué*, the man has killed it. *L'homme s'est tué*, the man has killed himself. *Quel gros lion l'homme a tué*, what a large lion the man has killed. *Voici le lion que l'homme a tué*, here is the lion which the man has killed.

3. The Direct Object of an Active Transitive sentence becomes the Subject of the corresponding Passive sentence. Compare:

The woman has killed the *lioness*; the *lioness* was killed by the woman.

In a Passive sentence the Past Participle agrees with the Subject like any ordinary complement: (§ 246, b, c.)

*La lionne sera tuée.*

*La lionne sera morte.*

*La lionne sera grande.*

*La lionne sera effrayante.*

In an Active transitive sentence the Past Participle may be considered—

(a.) Either as being so far a verb as to govern the Direct Object, and yet so far an adjective as to agree with that Direct Object: \*

*L'homme aura tué la lionne.*

(β.) Or as being (with the auxiliary) a verb governing the Direct Object,\* and as not being an adjective at all:

*L'homme aura tué la lionne.*

Till the 16th century the Past Participle was always made to agree with its Direct Object, as in (α) above. Then came a period of confusion in which some writers made the Past

---

\* See note, p. 146.

Participle agree, and some did not. At last the practice settled down into the following form :—

1. *The Past Participle agrees with its own Direct Object,\* when that Direct Object comes BEFORE it. The Past Participle is then treated as both adjective and verb.*

Ne craignez pas la lionne, l'homme l'a tuée.

Ne craignez ni le lion ni la lionne, l'homme les a tués.

Quelle grande lionne l'homme a tuée.

Quels beaux lions l'homme a tués.

Voici la lionne que l'homme a tuée.

Voici le lion et la lionne que l'homme a tués.

2. *The Past Participle does not agree with its own Direct Object,\* when that Direct Object comes AFTER it. The Past Participle is then treated as a verb only.*

L'homme a tué la lionne ; ne la craignez pas.

L'homme a tué le lion et la lionne ; ne les craignez pas.

L'homme a tué cette grande lionne.

L'homme a tué ces beaux lions.

L'homme a tué la lionne que voici.

L'homme a tué le lion et la lionne que voici.

### THIRD CONCORD: THE RELATIVE AND ITS ANTECEDENT.

§ 250. The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in gender and number. In case, it depends upon its own clause.

Le monsieur, *qui* demeure là, est mon ami. The gentleman, who lives there, is my friend.

Les messieurs, *qui* demeurent là, sont mes amis. The gentlemen, who live there, are my friends.

L'argent, *que* ce monsieur lui a donné, est perdu. The money, which that gentleman has given him, is lost.

### FOURTH CONCORD: APPPOSITION.

§ 251. A Noun or Pronoun agrees in case with that to which it is in apposition.

*Il* fut mon ami

He was my friend

L'état, *c'est* moi

I am the state

\* See note, p. 146.

## NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

## § 252. Composite Subject.

"Two or more singular subjects equal one in the plural, and require a plural verb." This is generally true, but sometimes the verb is put in the singular: the sense is followed rather than the form.

(a) *Two or more singular subjects may form one complex singular idea:*

Sa piété et sa droiture lui attire ce respect. (BOSSUET.)

(b) *The verb may agree with the nearest subject, and be understood with the rest:*

Louis, son fils, l'état, l'Europe est dans vos mains.

(VOLTAIRE.)

(c) *When two or more singular subjects are connected by 'ni' or 'ou,' the agreement depends more on sense than on form:*

Le temps ou la mort sont nos remèdes. (J. J. ROUSSEAU.)

Ou ton sang ou le mien lavera cette injure. (VOLTAIRE.)

Ni lui ni son père ne sera ambassadeur à Paris.

Ni lui ni son frère ne seront ambassadeurs.

## § 253. Impersonal Subject.

*Ce* employed substantively takes a plural verb, only when the substantive which follows is third person plural:

*Ce sont* mes parents.

*Ce sont* eux.

*C'est* mon père et ma mère.

*C'est* moi et lui. *C'est* nous.

## § 254. Instances of Anomalous Agreement.

1. *Nu* never agrees when it forms a compound word with the following substantive: *nu-tête*, *nu-pieds*, etc. But it agrees under other circumstances: *Il a les pieds nus*, *il a la tête nue*, etc. This rule is modern.

2. *Demi*, like *nu*, does not agree, when with the following substantive it forms a compound word: *une demi-heure*; *une demi-ivre*, etc. But it agrees when the noun is understood: *une heure et demie*; *une livre et demie*. This rule, also, is modern.

3. The agreement of *feu* is very strange. *Feu* can be placed before the article and the noun, or immediately before the noun: in the former case it is invariable; in the latter it agrees: *feu la reine*; *la feue reine*.

*Intransitive Verbs which take 'être.'* (See § 183.)

The Intransitive verbs which take *être* as auxiliary have a position intermediate between active and passive verbs (§ 217). They are active, but the Past Participle is treated as an adjectival complement, and is made to agree with the subject.

*Ta gloire est passée.* (DELAUVIGNE.)

*Elle est morte pour lui.* (RACINE.)

*Quand on fut à quelques pas du mûrier où étaient restés les frères et les sœurs.* (STAHL.)

*Nous étions partis de Valdemasa.* (G. SAND.)

*Elle est entrée dans l'église.* (VIGNY.)

## CHAPTER II.—MOODS.

## Infinitive Mood.

§ 255. 1. The Infinitive Mood is distinctly substantival in its use :

Apprendre par cœur lui est facile, *Learning by heart is easy to him.*

Je voulais nager, *I wished to swim.*

Je sais lire et écrire, *I can read and write.*

Il m'apprend à lire, *He teaches me to read.*

Cessez de faire du bruit, *Leave off making a noise.*

2. In English the Infinitive in *-ing* (or *Gerund*) is often put instead of the simple Infinitive. This Verbal Substantive in *-ing* must be carefully distinguished from the Present Participle or Verbal Adjective in *-ing*.

Seeing is believing (subst.), Voir, c'est croire.

Seeing this, he left me (adj.), Voyant cela, il me quitta.

3. It is employed in Subordinate Sentences instead of the Indicative Conditional or Subjunctive when no ambiguity is caused by its use :

Je vous dis *d'aller* là avec moi, I tell you to go there with me.

But :—

Je veux *que vous alliez* là, I wish you to go there.

4. Notice the idiom with the Present Infinitive active :

Hard to do (or) hard to be done, *Difficile à faire.*

House to let (or) house to be let, *Maison à louer.*

§ 256. The Infinitive without Preposition is mostly equivalent to an Accusative of the Direct Object, and to a Nominative of the Subject ; the Infinitive with *de* to a Genitive ; the Infinitive with *à* to a Dative ; but this is far from being always true.

**§ 257. Verbs which require no Preposition before the following Infinitive.**

|             |                     |                |                           |
|-------------|---------------------|----------------|---------------------------|
| aimer mieux | <i>to prefer</i>    | falloir (imp.) | <i>must, be necessary</i> |
| aller       | <i>to go</i>        | s'imaginer     | <i>to imagine</i>         |
| avouer      | <i>to confess</i>   | oser           | <i>to dare</i>            |
| compter     | <i>to reckon</i>    | paraître       | <i>to appear</i>          |
| croire      | <i>to believe</i>   | prétendre      | <i>to pretend</i>         |
| daigner     | <i>to deign</i>     | savoir         | <i>to know</i>            |
| devoir      | <i>to have (to)</i> | sembler        | <i>to seem</i>            |
| entendre    | <i>to hear</i>      | témoigner      | <i>to testify</i>         |
| envoyer     | <i>to send</i>      | voir           | <i>to see</i>             |
| faire       | <i>to make</i>      | vouloir        | <i>to wish</i>            |
|             |                     | etc.           |                           |

**§ 258. Verbs which require 'de' before next Infinitive.**

|                   |                                                |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| s'abstenir (de)   | <i>to abstain, etc.*</i>                       |
| accuser (de)      | <i>to accuse, to charge, etc.</i>              |
| achever (de)      | <i>to finish, to complete, etc.</i>            |
| affecter (de)     | <i>to affect, to pretend, etc.</i>             |
| s'affliger (de)   | <i>to be afflicted, to grieve, etc.</i>        |
| ambitioner (de)   | <i>to aim, etc.</i>                            |
| s'applaudir (de)  | <i>to congratulate oneself, etc.</i>           |
| appartenir (de)   | <i>to have a right, etc.</i>                   |
| appréhender (de)  | <i>to fear, etc.</i>                           |
| avertir (de)      | <i>to forewarn, to inform, etc.</i>            |
| s'aviser (de)     | <i>to think, to find out, to imagine, etc.</i> |
| blâmer (de)       | <i>to blame, to censure, etc.</i>              |
| brûler (de)       | <i>to be anxious, etc.</i>                     |
| cesser (de)       | <i>to leave off, to give up, etc.</i>          |
| charger (de)      | <i>to charge, to undertake, etc.</i>           |
| conjurér (de)     | <i>to pray, to beseech, etc.</i>               |
| conseiller (de)   | <i>to advise, to forewarn, etc.</i>            |
| se contenter (de) | <i>to be content, to be pleased, etc.</i>      |

---

\* In English, sometimes the simple infinitive with *to*, sometimes the gerund with some prepositions, is employed: *J'affecte d'aller*, I pretend to go. *Je m'abstiens d'aller*, I abstain from going, etc., etc.

|                   |                                                  |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| convenir (de)     | <i>to agree, to suit, etc.</i>                   |
| craindre (de)     | <i>to fear, to hesitate, etc.</i>                |
| dédaigner (de)    | <i>to disdain, to scorn, etc.</i>                |
| défendre (de)     | <i>to forbid, etc.</i>                           |
| désespérer (de)   | <i>to despair, to give up, etc.</i>              |
| désirer (de)      | <i>to wish, to long, etc.</i>                    |
| différer (de)     | <i>to put off, to delay, etc.</i>                |
| dire (de)         | <i>to tell, etc.</i>                             |
| dispenser (de)    | <i>to give up, to dispense, etc.</i>             |
| s'empêcher (de)   | <i>to refrain, to forbear, etc.</i>              |
| entreprendre (de) | <i>to undertake, to attempt, etc.</i>            |
| essayer (de)      | <i>to try, etc.</i>                              |
| s'étonner (de)    | <i>to be astonished, to be surprised, etc.</i>   |
| éviter (de)       | <i>to avoid, to shun, etc.</i>                   |
| s'excuser (de)    | <i>to excuse oneself, to apologise, etc.</i>     |
| feindre (de)      | <i>to affect, to pretend, etc.</i>               |
| féliciter (de)    | <i>to congratulate oneself, to be satisfied.</i> |
| se flatter (de)   | <i>to flatter oneself, to hope, trust, etc.</i>  |
| frémir (de)       | <i>to shudder, etc.</i>                          |
| se garder (de)    | <i>to take heed, etc.</i>                        |
| gémir (de)        | <i>to groan, to lament, etc.</i>                 |
| se glorifier (de) | <i>to glory, to boast, etc.</i>                  |
| se hâter (de)     | <i>to hasten, to hurry, etc.</i>                 |
| jurer (de)        | <i>to swear, to declare, etc.</i>                |
| manquer (de)      | <i>to fail, to want, etc.</i>                    |
| menacer (de)      | <i>to threaten, etc.</i>                         |
| mériter (de)      | <i>to deserve, etc.</i>                          |
| nier (de)         | <i>to deny, etc.</i>                             |
| ordonner (de)     | <i>to order, etc.</i>                            |
| oublier (de)      | <i>to forget, to omit, etc.</i>                  |
| parler (de)       | <i>to speak, to talk about, etc.</i>             |
| permettre (de)    | <i>to allow, etc.</i>                            |
| persuader (de)    | <i>to persuade, to convince, etc.</i>            |
| plaindre (de)     | <i>to pity, etc.</i>                             |
| se plaindre (de)  | <i>to complain, etc.</i>                         |
| se presser (de)   | <i>to hurry, etc.</i>                            |
| promettre (de)    | <i>to promise, etc.</i>                          |



|                  |                                      |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| se proposer (de) | <i>to propose to oneself, etc.</i>   |
| punir (de)       | <i>to punish, etc.</i>               |
| se rappeler (de) | <i>to remember, etc.</i>             |
| recommander (de) | <i>to recommend, etc.</i>            |
| refuser (de)     | <i>to refuse, etc.</i>               |
| regretter (de)   | <i>to regret, etc.</i>               |
| se réjouir (de)  | <i>to rejoice, to be glad, etc.</i>  |
| remercier (de)   | <i>to thank, be grateful, etc.</i>   |
| se repentir (de) | <i>to repent, to be sorry, etc.</i>  |
| rire (de)        | <i>to laugh, etc.</i>                |
| risquer (de)     | <i>to risk, to venture, etc.</i>     |
| rougir (de)      | <i>to blush, to be ashamed, etc.</i> |
| souhaiter (de)   | <i>to wish, to desire, etc.</i>      |
| soupçonner (de)  | <i>to suspect, etc.</i>              |
| se souvenir (de) | <i>to remember, etc.</i>             |
| supplier (de)    | <i>to beseech, to beg, etc.</i>      |
| tenter (de)      | <i>to attempt, to try, etc.</i>      |
| se vanter (de)   | <i>to boast, etc.</i>                |
|                  | <i>etc.</i>                          |

### § 259. Verbs which require 'à' before next Infinitive.

|                  |                                                         |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| (s')abaisser (à) | <i>to lower oneself, to condescend, etc.</i>            |
| aboutir (à)      | <i>to lead, end, to tend, etc.</i>                      |
| s'accoutumer (à) | <i>to get into the habit, to accustom oneself, etc.</i> |
| s'acharner (à)   | <i>to be bent (upon), etc.</i>                          |
| aimer (à)        | <i>to find pleasure, to like, etc.</i>                  |
| s'amuser (à)     | <i>to amuse oneself, to waste time, etc.</i>            |
| s'appliquer (à)  | <i>to apply, to devote oneself, etc.</i>                |
| apprendre (à)    | <i>to learn, to teach, etc.</i>                         |
| s'apprêter (à)   | <i>to get ready, to prepare, etc.</i>                   |
| aspirer (à)      | <i>to wish, to aspire, etc.</i>                         |
| s'attacher (à)   | <i>to apply oneself, to cling, etc.</i>                 |
| s'attendre (à)   | <i>to hope, to expect, to fear, etc.</i>                |
| s'augmenter (à)  | <i>to increase, to enlarge, etc.</i>                    |
| autoriser (à)    | <i>to authorise, to empower, etc.</i>                   |
| avoir (à)        | <i>to have, etc.</i>                                    |

|                     |                                               |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| balancer (à)        | <i>to hesitate, etc.</i>                      |
| borner (à)          | <i>to limit, to bound, etc.</i>               |
| chercher (à)        | <i>to endeavour, to try, etc.</i>             |
| se complaire (à)    | <i>to take pleasure, etc.</i>                 |
| se condamner (à)    | <i>to condemn, to find fault, etc.</i>        |
| consentir (à)       | <i>to consent, etc.</i>                       |
| consister (à)       | <i>to consist, etc.</i>                       |
| conspirer (à)       | <i>to conspire, to plot.</i>                  |
| se consumer (à)     | <i>to wear oneself out, to waste away.</i>    |
| contribuer (à)      | <i>to contribute, etc.</i>                    |
| déterminer (à)      | <i>to determine, to resolve, etc.</i>         |
| se disposer (à)     | <i>to dispose oneself, to prepare, etc.</i>   |
| donner (à)          | <i>to give, to charge, etc.</i>               |
| employer (à)        | <i>to make use of, to employ.</i>             |
| encourager (à)      | <i>to encourage, etc.</i>                     |
| engager (à)         | <i>to engage, to pledge, etc.</i>             |
| enhardir (à)        | <i>to embolden, etc.</i>                      |
| s'enhardir (à)      | <i>to grow bold, to dare, etc.</i>            |
| enseigner (à)       | <i>to teach, etc.</i>                         |
| s'étudier (à)       | <i>to endeavour, etc.</i>                     |
| exhorter (à)        | <i>to exhort, to encourage, etc.</i>          |
| s'exposer (à)       | <i>to expose oneself, to run a risk, etc.</i> |
| se fatiguer (à)     | <i>to tire oneself, etc.</i>                  |
| s'habituer (à)      | <i>to accustom oneself, etc.</i>              |
| hésiter (à)         | <i>to hesitate, etc.</i>                      |
| inviter (à)         | <i>to invite, to engage, etc.</i>             |
| montrer (à)         | <i>to show how, etc.</i>                      |
| s'obstiner (à)      | <i>to persist, to be obstinate, etc.</i>      |
| s'opiniâtrer (à)    | <i>to persist, to be obstinate, etc.</i>      |
| parvenir (à)        | <i>to succeed, to attain, etc.</i>            |
| pencher (à)         | <i>to incline, to lean, etc.</i>              |
| penser (à)          | <i>to think, to take care, etc.</i>           |
| persévérer (à)      | <i>to persevere, etc.</i>                     |
| persister (à)       | <i>to persist, etc.</i>                       |
| se plaire (à)       | <i>to take pleasure, etc.</i>                 |
| prendre plaisir (à) | <i>to delight, etc.</i>                       |
| se préparer (à)     | <i>to dispose, to prepare oneself.</i>        |

|                  |                                         |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| provoquer (à)    | <i>to provoke, to excite, etc.</i>      |
| réduire (à)      | <i>to reduce, etc.</i>                  |
| renoncer (à)     | <i>to give up, to renounce, etc.</i>    |
| se résigner (à)  | <i>to resign oneself, etc.</i>          |
| se résoudre (à)  | <i>to resolve, to be resolved, etc.</i> |
| réussir (à)      | <i>to succeed, etc.</i>                 |
| servir (à)       | <i>to serve, to be useful, etc.</i>     |
| songer (à)       | <i>to think, etc.</i>                   |
| se soumettre (à) | <i>to submit, etc.</i>                  |
| suffire (à)      | <i>to suffice, etc.</i>                 |
| tenir (à)        | <i>to care, etc.</i>                    |
| travailler (à)   | <i>to work, to labour, etc.</i>         |
| trouver (à)      | <i>to find, etc.</i>                    |
| viser (à)        | <i>to aim, etc.</i>                     |
|                  | <i>etc.</i>                             |

**§ 260. Verbs which take 'à' or 'de' before the following Infinitive.**

|                      |                                     |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| commencer (à) (de)   | <i>to begin</i>                     |
| continuer (à) (de)   | <i>to go on, etc.</i>               |
| contraindre (à) (de) | <i>to force, to oblige, etc.</i>    |
| demander (à) (de)    | <i>to ask, to require.</i>          |
| s'efforcer (à) (de)  | <i>to try, to strive, etc.</i>      |
| s'empresser (à) (de) | <i>to be eager, to hurry, etc.</i>  |
| essayer (à) (de)     | <i>to try, to attempt, etc.</i>     |
| forcer (à) (de)      | <i>to force, to constrain, etc.</i> |
| se hasarder (à) (de) | <i>to risk, to hazard, etc.</i>     |
| tâcher (à) (de)      | <i>to try, to endeavour, etc.</i>   |
|                      | <i>etc.</i>                         |

**OBSERVATION :—**The meaning is usually the same, whether *à* or *de* is employed. *Venir* is the most important exception :

*Il vient de mourir,* He is just dead.

*S'il vient à mourir,* If he happens to die.

*Il vient mourir* means *he comes to die.*

## Indicative and Conditional Moods.

### § 261. INDICATIVE.

The Indicative mood is mainly used in Principal sentences to affirm or deny :

Le facteur vous a donné mes bagages,

The porter has given you my luggage.

Le facteur ne vous a pas donné mes bagages,

The porter has not given you my luggage.

The Indicative is also used in subordinate sentences instead of the Subjunctive, when it is desired to state a fact :

Je sais qu'il ira                      I know he will go.

Je sais qu'il est allé              I know that he is gone.

### § 262. CONDITIONAL.

The Conditional is mostly used in Principal sentences to which a condition, expressed or understood, is annexed. This its name implies :

La facteur vous aurait donné vos bagages, s'il avait pu,

The porter would have given you your luggage, if  
he had been able.

Il pourrait bien faire cela (*i.e.*, s'il voulait).

He could very well do that (*i.e.*, if he would).

It is also used in Subordinate sentences instead of the Subjunctive, but it then loses the conditional meaning, from which it takes its name,\* and becomes practically a Future Indicative ; but a Future Indicative looked at from the Past, and not from the Present, like the ordinary Future Indicative. (§§ 218, 278.)

The two tenses may then be conveniently called *Present Future Indicative* and *Past Future Indicative*.

I say that I shall go to-morrow,

Je dis que j'irai demain.

I said that I should go the next day,

J'ai dit que j'irais le lendemain.

---

\* It has not always conditional force even in the Principal sentence

### Subjunctive Mood.

#### § 263. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

The Indicative and Conditional Mood forms may be employed in subordinate sentences; the Subjunctive Mood forms are rarely employed otherwise; this the name "Subjunctive" implies.

Subordinate sentences are of three kinds:—

**SUBSTANTIVAL**: which stand in the relation of a substantive to the principal sentence. They are usually introduced by the conjunction *que*. (§ 264.)

**ADJECTIVAL**: which stand in the relation of an adjective to the principal sentence. They are usually introduced by a relative. (§ 265.)

**ADVERBIAL**: which stand in the relation of an adverb to the principal sentence. They are usually introduced by compound conjunctions. (§ 266.)

In Substantival and Adjectival sentences the Subjunctive, and not the Indicative or Conditional, is employed where the Principal sentence contains some expression which creates doubt or uncertainty in the general statement.

In Adverbial sentences this is also true, but usage has somewhat overridden the principle, and it is safer to trust to lists based on this usage. About three-sevenths of these compound conjunctions always have the Subjunctive; about three-sevenths always have the Indicative, about one-seventh have either the Subjunctive or Indicative, according as there is doubt or not. (§ 241.)

**OBS.**:—Notice the absence of '*may*' and '*might*' in the subordinate sentences (§ 182).

## § 264. SUBSTANTIVAL SENTENCES.

Substantival sentences are introduced by *que*. In them the Subjunctive mood is more commonly employed than the Indicative or Conditional after—

1. Expressions of uncertainty, expediency, fear, surprise joy, sorrow, etc.

|                                     |                                |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Je doute qu'il <i>écrive</i>        | I doubt if he will write       |
| Il faut qu'il <i>écrive</i>         | He must write                  |
| Je crains qu'il n' <i>écrive</i>    | I fear lest he should write    |
| Je suis surpris qu'il <i>écrive</i> | I am surprised he writes       |
| Je suis ravi qu'il <i>écrive</i>    | I am pleased for him to write. |
| Je suis fâché qu'il <i>écrive</i>   | I am sorry for him to write    |

2. Expressions of will, desire, permission, hindrance, etc.

|                                  |                            |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| J'exige qu'il <i>écrive</i>      | I insist upon his writing  |
| Je désire qu'il <i>écrive</i>    | I wish him to write        |
| Je consens qu'il <i>écrive</i>   | I consent to his writing   |
| J'empêche qu'il n' <i>écrive</i> | I prevent him from writing |

If any of these expressions are put in an interrogative or negative form, the probability of the Subjunctive being the correct mood is *increased*, and therefore, *s'imaginer* (imagine), *se douter* (suspect), *s'attendre* (expect), *penser* (think), *présumer* (presume), *soupçonner* (suspect), *croire* (think), *espérer* (hope), which take the Indicative when used affirmatively, have the Subjunctive when used interrogatively or negatively : \*

Il s'*imagine* que nous y *allons*,

He imagines we are going there.

S'*imagine-t-il* que nous y *allions* ?

Does he imagine that we are going there ?

Il ne s'*imagine pas* que nous y *allions*,

He does not imagine that we are going there.

---

\* Formerly, after these verbs, the Subjunctive was usual in the Subordinate sentence as after other verbs of doubt. Custom has established the distinction given above.

## § 265. ADJECTIVAL SENTENCES.

Adjectival sentences are usually introduced by a relative. In them, as in Substantival sentences, the Subjunctive is more commonly employed than the Indicative or Conditional :—

1. When the Principal sentence expresses a mere expectation or wish : *Montrez-moi une seule faute que j'aie faite*, Shew me a single mistake that I have made (I feel sure you will not be able); but, *Montrez-moi la faute que j'ai faite*, Shew me the mistake I have made (I know that there is one).
2. In assertions which are mere matters of opinion ; *L'homme est le seul être qui sache qu'il doit mourir*, Man is the only being who knows that he must die ; but, *L'homme est le seul être qui est droit sur ses pieds*, Man is the only being who stands upright.

As with Substantival sentences, if there is an interrogation or negation in the Principal sentence, the probability of the Subjunctive being the right mood is increased.

## § 266. ADVERBIAL SENTENCES.

Adverbial sentences are usually introduced by various Compound Conjunctions, which are differently classed into *conditional*, *concessive*, *consecutive*, *final*, *temporal*, *causal*, *comparative*. (See § 241.)

## CONDITIONAL.

*À moins que, pourvu que, en cas que, soit que, supposé que, pour peu que* (§ 182).

*J'irai, à moins qu'elle ne soit malade,*

I shall go, unless she is ill.

*Soit qu'il vienne ou non, j'irai,*

Whether he comes or not, I shall go.

*Elle le verra, pourvu qu'il lui plaise,*

She will receive him, provided he pleases her.

*Habille-toi, en cas qu'il vienne,*

Dress yourself, in case he comes.

## CONCESSIVE.

*Quoique, bien que, encore que.*

Il réussira, *quoique* nous en pensions,  
 He will succeed, whatever we may think about it.  
 Elle le fit, *bien qu'*elle en souffrit,  
 She did it, though she suffered in doing so.  
 Nous l'avons laissé partir, *encore que* nous l'aimions,  
 We have let him go, notwithstanding our love for him.

## FINAL.

*Pour que, afin que, de peur que, de crainte que.*  
 Il viendra, *pour que* nous l'admirions,  
 He will come, for us to admire him.  
 Nous l'arrosons, *afin qu'*il ne périsse pas,  
 We water it, that it should not die.  
 Attachez-le, *de peur qu'*il ne s'échappe,  
 Tie him, for fear he should escape.  
 Nous l'amusons, *de crainte qu'*elle ne s'ennuie,  
 We amuse her, for fear she should be dull.

## TEMPORAL.

*Avant que, jusqu'à ce que, en attendant que.*  
 Il mourra *avant qu'*elle vienne,  
 He will die before she comes.  
 Nous attendrons *jusqu'à ce qu'*il se décide,  
 We will wait until he decides.  
 Nous jouons en *attendant que* l'heure du travail arrive,  
 We play till the time for work comes.

## CONSECUTIVE.

*De manière que, de sorte que.*

Il s'arrange *de manière que* nous puissions le voir,  
 He manages so that we may be able to see him.  
 Il est parti, *de sorte que* je me trouve seul,  
 He is gone, so that I find myself alone.



## § 267. ADDITION OF 'NE' IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCE.

*Ne* is usually added in the Subordinate clause after certain verbs, conjunctions, etc., but not necessarily \* with any negative meaning :

1. After verbs (a) of fearing, (b) hindering, (c) precaution, used affirmatively.

|                |   |                        |
|----------------|---|------------------------|
| (a) Je tremble | } | qu'il <i>ne</i> vienne |
| J'ai peur      |   |                        |
| Je crains      |   |                        |

I fear lest he should come.

(b) La pluie empêche qu'on *ne* sorte,  
The rain prevents one from going out.

(c) Prenez garde qu'il *ne* vous frappe,  
Take care lest he strike you.

2. Usually after *douter*, *nier* used negatively :

Je ne doute pas qu'il *ne* vous voie,

I do not doubt that he sees you.

Ne nie-t-il pas que nous *ne* l'ayons surpris ?

Does he not deny that we have surprised him ?

Nous ne désespérons pas qu'il *ne* le fasse,

We do not despair of his doing it.

3. After *de crainte que*, *de peur que*, etc., used affirmatively:

Partons, de crainte qu'il *ne* nous surprenne,

Let us set out, for fear he should surprise us.

Il parle bas, de peur qu'on *ne* puisse l'entendre,

He speaks in a whisper, lest he should be heard.

Je ne le ferai pas, à moins que vous *ne* le vouliez.

I shall not do it, unless you wish it.

4. After *mieux*, *meilleur*, *pire*, *autre*, *plutôt*, etc., employed affirmatively :

Il est plus riche qu'il n'était,

He is richer than he was.

---

\* Often the *ne* has no special meaning, but as a rule it adds to the general uncertainty of the statement.

## § 268. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

The Subjunctive is often used without any preceding verb, to express a wish or exhortation (optative). It is mostly the Simple Present Subjunctive that is thus used, but other tenses are also found.

Que je vous retrouve à mon retour,  
 Let me find you on my return.  
 Que je meure, si je vous trahis,  
 May I die, if I betray you.  
 Qu'il parte à l'instant,  
 Let him go at once.  
 Puisses-tu échapper à la guerre,  
 May you escape war.  
 Puissiez-vous réussir,  
 May you succeed.  
 Vive l'Empereur,  
 Long live the Emperor.  
 Dieu vous bénisse,  
 God bless you.  
 Plût à Dieu,  
 Would to God.

The Present Subjunctive, first person plural, is not so employed. (See Imperative, below.)

## § 269. IMPERATIVE.

The Imperative usually commands :

Va,            Go.            Asseyez-vous, Sit down.

But in the first person plural it expresses a wish rather than a command :

Partons                      Let us set out.  
 Ne tardons plus            Let us no longer delay.

Compare Optative use of the Subjunctive (§ 268).

## CHAPTER III.—TENSES.\*

## PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

## § 270. Simple Present.

## REGULAR USE.

To express what its name implies, indefinite action or state in present time. (Compare *Simple Past* and *Simple Future*.)

*Je le vois, I see it.*

## § 271. Imperfect Present.

## REGULAR USE.

To express what its name implies, present action or state, as unfinished, habitual, etc. (Compare *Imperfect Past* and *Imperfect Future*.)

*Pendant que vous dormez, je travaille.* Whilst you are sleeping, I am working.

*Je lis beaucoup.* I read a great deal.

The English *Simple Present*, *I write*, and the *Imperfect Present*, *I am writing*, are in French expressed by one form. The two tenses are combined in the following remarks :—

## IRREGULAR USE.

1. As an immediate *Simple Future*, especially when the futurity is sufficiently marked by an adverbial expression. It often alternates with future forms.

*Demain la trêve expire ; la guerre recommencera.*

To-morrow the truce expires ; the war will begin again.

2. As a *Simple Past*, to give life to the narrative (*Historic Present*). It often alternates with past forms.

*Un lundi en rentrant, je trouve un de mes camarades. Dès qu'il m'aperçut, "Viens voir, me dit-il, viens voir." J'accours.* (LÉGOUVÉ.) One Monday, in coming in, I find one of my school-fellows. As soon as he saw me he said to me, "Come and see, come and see." *I run.*

3. As a *Perfect Present*.

*Il y a un an que vous êtes à Paris.* You have been (now) a year in Paris.

---

\* § 177.

## § 272. Perfect Present.

## REGULAR USE.

To express what its name implies, finished action or state in present time. (Compare *Perfect Past* and *Perfect Future*.)  
Hence,

1. Action past, but connected with the present by such words as *aujourd'hui*, *cette semaine*, *cette année*, etc.

*Cette année la moisson a été bonne.*

This year the harvest has been good.

*Il a fait bien chaud aujourd'hui.*

It has been very hot to-day.

2. Action past, but connected with the Present by the absence of any fixed period, such as a date, etc., to which the idea of past momentary action can be attached :

*Napoléon est mort à St. Hélène.*

Napoleon died at St. Helena.

3. Action past, but of which the consequences remain.  
This is true of all Perfect tenses.

*Le malade a passé une bonne nuit ; il est mieux.*

The sick man has passed a good night ; he is better.

On peut dire que les Romains nous *ont enseigné* l'agriculture.  
(LACOMBE.)

We may say that the Romans taught us agriculture.

## IRREGULAR USE.

4. To express indefinite past action or state.

In conversation, etc., the *Perfect Present* forms are more commonly employed than those of the Simple Past tense—possibly because, as a rule in conversation, only such subjects are spoken of as are lately past. (Compare above, 3.)

*Je te dirai seulement ce que j'ai vu.*

I will tell you only what I saw.

5. To express an immediate *Simple Future* :

*Attendez, j'ai fini dans un moment.*

Wait, I shall have finished in a moment.

## § 273. Simple Past.\* (Aorist.)

## REGULAR USE.

To express what its name implies, indefinite action or state in past time. (Compare *Simple Present* and *Simple Future*.)

Un matin, un matin d'hiver, le prince *sortit* du palais par la petite porte du jardin et se *trouva* bientôt dans la campagne. (SCHOLL.)

One morning, one winter's morning, the prince *went* out of the palace by the small garden gate, and soon *found* himself in the open fields.

## § 274. Imperfect Past.

## REGULAR USE.

To express what its name implies, past action or state, as unfinished, habitual, etc. (Compare *Imperfect Present* and *Imperfect Future*.)

Pendant que vous *dormiez*, je *travavais*.

Whilst you were sleeping, I was working.

Comme je me *promenais* le long de la Rue de Rivoli, un garde-national m'aborda, et me demanda mon passeport.

As I was walking along the Rue de Rivoli a garde-national accosted me, and asked me for my passport.

Je *lisais* beaucoup.

I read (or, I used to read) a great deal.

Hence the *Simple Past* is employed for the main facts of a narrative, the *Imperfect Past* for all that is secondary. This distinction is not always made in English, where the form *I wrote* constantly takes the place of *I was writing*, *I used to write*, etc.†

---

\* It is important to notice that this tense has many other names (§ 187. 7).

† The form *ich sang* usually goes by the name of *Imperfect* in German grammars. Professor Whitney, however, calls it *Preterite*.

Le major Vernon *dînait* à la table d'hôte de l'Hôtel des Armes de France. Il s'y *montrait* silencieux comme partout, et *paraissait* assez content de l'ordinaire. Un seul jour,—et ce jour était précisément le Vendredi Saint,—il se PLAIGNIT, FIT grand tapage et DONNA lieu à une scène très blâmable qui se RÉPANDIT promptement dans la ville, où elle PRODUISIT un effet que je vous laisse à penser.

Major Vernon was in the habit of dining at the table d'hôte of the Hotel "The Arms of France." There, as elsewhere, he was silent, and seemed satisfied enough with the usual fare. One day,—and this day was precisely Good Friday,—he complained, made a great row, and gave rise to an objectionable scene, the news of which spread promptly into the town, where it produced an effect which I leave you to imagine.

La patte DISPARUT dans sa poche, et il s'ÉLOIGNA.

Je COURUS de nouveau après lui.

"Quinze sous!"

"Quarante!"

"Vingt sous!"

"Quarante!"

"Vingt-cinq sous!"

"Quarante! . . ."

Comme il *connaissait* déjà le cœur humain! Chaque fois que ce terrible mot 'quarante' *touchait* mon oreille, il *emportait* un peu de ma résistance. Au bout de deux minutes, je ne me *connaissais* plus!

"Eh bien donc, quarante!" . . m'ÉCRIAI-je; "donne-la-moi."

"Donne-moi d'abord l'argent," REPRIT-il. Je lui MIS dans la main les quinze sous de ma semaine, et il me FIT écrire un billet de vingt cinq sous pour le surplus. . . . Oh! le scélérat! il *était* déjà homme d'affaire à treize ans! . . . Puis tirant enfin le cher objet de sa poche! "Tiens," me DIT-il, "là voilà!"

(LEGOUVÉ.)

## § 275. Perfect Past (Pluperfect).

## REGULAR USE.

To express what its name implies, finished action or state in past time. (Compare *Perfect Present* and *Perfect Future*.)

J'avais écrit la lettre avant dix heures hier au soir.

I had written the letter before ten o'clock yesterday evening.

J'avais écrit la lettre quand il entra.

I had written the letter when he came in.

## IRREGULAR USE.

To express at a time itself past *simple* past action or state. (Compare Irregular use of *Perfect Present*.) It has been shown that the *Perfect Present* is constantly employed instead of the *Simple Past* (§ 272. 4). It is equally true that the form *j'avais écrit* is constantly employed instead of the form *j'eus écrit*.\*

Je te dirai seulement ce que j'ai vu.

I shall only tell you what I saw.

Je te dirais seulement ce que j'avais vu.

I should only tell you what I had seen.

\* The form *j'avais* supposes unfinished past action, the form *j'eus* indefinite past action. This distinction is ill maintained in the compound forms, *j'avais écrit*, *j'eus écrit*; the former is commonly used, the latter exceptionally. It has therefore been omitted in the paradigms (§§ 188—199). For practical purposes it is sufficient to know that the form *I had written* is rendered by *j'eus écrit*, only after the conjunctions *aussitôt que*; *dès que*; *à peine . . . que*; *après que*, *quand*, etc.

Aussitôt que je l'eus aperçu là, je sentis qu'il avait tort.

As soon as I saw him there, I felt sure that he was wrong.

Dès que je l'eus entendu pleurer, je me repentis.

As soon as I heard him cry, I repented.

À peine eut-il monté sur l'arbre, que la branche se cassa.

He had hardly climbed up the tree, when the branch broke.

Après qu'il eut demandé pardon, on l'excusa.

After he had begged to be forgiven, they excused him.

Quand elles eurent bien dansé, elles partirent.

When they had danced a great deal, they went away.

## § 276. Simple Future.\*

## REGULAR USE.

To express what its name implies, indefinite action or state in future time. (Compare *Simple Present* and *Simple Past*.)

*J'irai* vous voir demain.

I shall go to see you to-morrow.

## IRREGULAR USE.

As an Imperative :

Vous *écrirez* cette lettre, et vous la *mettrez* à la poste.

You will write that letter and will put it in the post.

## § 277. Imperfect Future.

## REGULAR USE.

To express what its name implies, future action or state, as unfinished, habitual, etc. (Compare *Imperfect Present* and *Imperfect Past*.)

Pendant que je *travaillerai* vous *dormirez*.

Whilst I (shall) work you will sleep.

The periphrastic form *serai à écrire* is often used instead of the form *j'écrirai*, when it is necessary to express very accurately the action as unfinished, in progress, etc.

## § 278. Perfect Future.

## REGULAR USE.

To express what its name implies, finished action or state, in future time. (Compare *Perfect Present* and *Perfect Past*.)

Il *aura* bientôt *vu* toutes les peintures du Louvre.

He will soon have seen all the paintings in the Louvre.

## IRREGULAR USE.

To express supposition :

Vous *aurez oublié* d'enregistrer vos bagages.

Perhaps you have forgotten to register your luggage.

---

\* It must be recollected the so-called *Present Conditional* is often a *Simple Future*; the *Past Conditional* a *Perfect Future* (§ 262).



## SUBORDINATE SENTENCE.

## § 279. Sequence of Tenses.

The Tense in the Subordinate sentence must correspond with that of the principal sentence, so that a consistent whole may be produced. This is called the *Sequence or Consecution of Tenses*.

Thus : I think he is singing ; I thought he was singing ; I think he was singing ; I think he will sing ; I thought he would sing ; etc., have correct sequence.

But—I thought he is singing ; I thought he will sing ; etc., have incorrect sequence.

When the Subordinate sentence has not the Subjunctive, this Sequence of tenses is easy, and needs no special explanation. It is only when the Subjunctive is employed that difficulties arise ; for several tenses are wanting in the Subjunctive, and one form has often to do double duty.

The following general rules may be given :—

1. If the Subordinate sentence does not require the Subjunctive Mood, that tense must be employed which would be right if the sentence were a principal sentence.

2. If the subordinate sentence requires the Subjunctive, this must be done as far as the forms will admit. (See Paradigms, §§ 188—199).

## EXAMPLES :

I know that he *is* there now.

Je sais qu'il *est* là maintenant.

I doubt if he *is* there now.

Je doute qu'il *soit* là maintenant.

I know that he *will be* there to-night.

Je sais qu'il *sera* là ce soir.

I doubt if he *will be* there to-night.

Je doute qu'il *soit* là ce soir.

We knew that he *was* ill.

Nous savions qu'il *était* malade.

We doubted if he *was* ill.

Nous doutions qu'il *fût* malade ; etc., etc.

## CHAPTER IV.—THE ARTICLES.

Articles are merely weak Determinative Adjective Pronouns. This is true in both English and French.

*Ce, cette, ces*, are stronger than *le, la, les*; *le, la, les*, are stronger than *un, une*. When it is desired to determine more strongly than can be done by *ce, cette, ces*, such adverbs as *ci, là*, are added, or some other form of expression is employed. When, on the contrary, it is desired to determine less strongly than is done by *un, une*, no article at all is employed.

The degree of definiteness which is required by established usage is not always the same in English and French. Still the two languages have much in common. Some of the cases in which they are alike, and all those in which they differ, are included in the following rules.

## § 280. Substantive employed in a General sense.

1. Before a Substantive employed in a general sense (that is, neither quite determinately nor quite indeterminately), the definite article is put in French, and omitted in English :

|                           |                 |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>L'homme</i> est mortel | Man is mortal.  |
| <i>L'or</i> est jaune     | Gold is yellow. |
| <i>La vie</i> est courte  | Life is short.  |

2. Under this heading seems to come the use of the article in French, and its non-use in English, before names of countries, provinces, and islands. (See, however, § 228. 2.)

|                     |           |
|---------------------|-----------|
| <i>La France</i>    | France.   |
| <i>La Normandie</i> | Normandy. |
| <i>La Sicile</i>    | Sicily.   |

etc., etc.

With other proper names the two languages correspond :

|                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| Londres et Paris | London and Paris.  |
| <i>La Tamise</i> | <i>The Thames.</i> |
| <i>Les Alpes</i> | <i>The Alps.</i>   |
| Néron            | Nero.              |

etc., etc.

### § 281. Substantive employed in an Indeterminate sense.

1. Before a Substantive used in an Indeterminate sense, no article is put for the most part either in English or French—

(a) Where a preposition and a substantive together equal an adjective :

|                        |                  |
|------------------------|------------------|
| un verre <i>de vin</i> | a glass of wine. |
| un verre <i>à vin</i>  | a wine glass     |

(b) When a preposition and a substantive together equal an adverb :

|                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| aller <i>à pied</i>    | to go on foot.      |
| aller <i>à cheval</i>  | to go on horseback. |
| mourir <i>de honte</i> | to die of shame.    |

(c) Where one idea is expressed by two words :

|               |                         |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| porter envie  | bear envy = envy.       |
| faire plaisir | give pleasure = please. |

(d) In the Partitive Genitive, after words of quantity (except *bien*,\* *plupart*) :

|                             |                      |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| beaucoup <i>de pain</i>     | much bread.          |
| trop <i>de viande</i>       | too much meat.       |
| pas <i>de bruit</i>         | no noise.            |
| une quantité <i>de pain</i> | a quantity of bread. |
| un peu <i>de pain</i>       | a little bread.      |

(e) In the Partitive Genitive, where the word of quantity is understood, and an adjective *precedes* the substantive :

|                        |              |
|------------------------|--------------|
| <i>de bon</i> pain     | good bread.  |
| <i>de bonne</i> viande | good meat.   |
| <i>de bons</i> chevaux | good horses. |
| <i>de bonnes</i> noix  | good nuts.   |

---

\* Still we say *bien d'autres*.

2. The article is also omitted, but perhaps more for the sake of conciseness and rapidity in—

(a) Many proverbs :

*Contentement passe richesse.*

Enough is as good as a feast.

(b) Enumerations :

*Hommes, femmes, enfants, tout périt.*

Men, women, children, all perished.

(c) Vocatives : *Courage, soldats !*

(d) Titles of books, etc. :

*Histoire de France*

History of France.

*Voyages en Afrique*

Travels in Africa.

3. Before words used in apposition, no article is put in French, but *an, a*, is usually employed in English :

Son père, *médecin* à Londres, est mort.

His father, *a doctor* in London, is dead.

Son père était *médecin* à Londres.

His father was *a doctor* in London.

4. The article is omitted in English, when Cardinals, and in French when Cardinals or Ordinals, are employed :

*Livre premier*

Book *the first* or Book *one*.

*Georges quatre*

George *the Fourth*.

*Page neuf*

Page *nine*.

5. The article is omitted in French after *quel*, but usually *an, a*, is put in English :

*Quel affreux naufrage !*

What *a* frightful shipwreck !

6. The article \* is omitted in such comparisons as :

*Plus on a, plus on veut avoir.*

The more one has, the more one wishes to have.

---

\* See *Student's French Grammar*, p. 359. 13.

§ 282. Substantive employed in a Determinate sense.

1. Before a substantive employed in a determinate sense, the article (or some stronger determinative) is employed in both English and French :

Le Président de la République.

The President of the Republic.

2. In many cases mentioned above (§ 281)—

(a) The substantive may be employed in a determinate sense and the definite article is restored :

Un verre du vin que vous avez acheté hier.

A glass of the wine which you bought yesterday.\*

Demandez des bons chevaux de notre écurie.

Ask for some of the good horses from our stables.

Son père, le fameux médecin, est mort.

His father, the famous doctor, is dead.

Le Paris d'autrefois n'existe plus.

The Paris of olden times exists no longer.

etc., etc.

(b) Or conciseness and rapidity may be sacrificed to energy :

Les hommes, les femmes, les enfants, tous périssent.

8. Sometimes a stronger Determinative Adjective is employed in one language than in the other :

(a) When the sense is distributive (= each), rather than determinative, *le* is used in French, *an* or *a* in English : †

Deux francs le kilogramme.

Two francs a kilogramme.

4. Often *le* is thought sufficient in French where a Possessive Adjective Pronoun is used in English :

Il a les larmes aux yeux.

He has tears in his eyes.

Je lui dois la vie.

I owe him my life.

\* We say *des petits-pains*, *des bonshommes*, etc., for a different reason ; they are compound words.

† Still we say, *trois cents francs par mois*, *par jour*, etc., three hundred francs a (per) month.

CHAPTER V.—PRONOUNS.\*

§ 283. Some Uses of the Conjunctive and Disjunctive Personal Pronouns.

1. A personal pronoun is said to be 'conjunctive' when closely connected with the verb ; 'disjunctive' when for any cause this close connexion is broken.

Hence the Disjunctive forms are employed—

(a) After a preposition :

*Avec nous ; sans lui*, etc. With us ; without him.

(b) When employed as complement :

*C'est moi*. It is I.

(c) In a composite subject :

*Lui et moi* sortirons. He and I will go out.

*Son frère et lui* sortiront. His brother and he will go out.

(d) In a composite object :

*J'ai parlé à lui et à elle*. I have spoken to him and to her

(e) When either an adjective or an adjectival sentence is put between the pronoun and verb :

*Lui seul s'échappa*. He alone ran away.

*Lui, qui est soldat, resta*. He, who is a soldier, remained.

*Lui, voyant le danger, s'échappa*. He, seeing the danger, ran away.

(f) In answers, and when emphatically employed :

*Qui s'échappa ? Lui*. Who ran away ? He.

*Eux ! esclaves !* They ! slaves !

2. The Disjunctive forms *moi, toi* (and these only), are employed conjunctively in Imperative affirmative phrases :

*Donnez-moi*. Give me.

*Lève-toi*. Get up.

3. The Disjunctive forms *moi, toi, lui, eux*, are all employed conjunctively for emphasis :

*Lui s'échappa, non pas moi !* It was he who ran away, not I.

---

\* Most of the uses of Pronouns have been explained in the *Accidence*.  
Smaller French Grammar.

### § 284. Some Uses of *Celui*, etc., and *Ce*.

The substantival forms *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, are more definite than the substantival form *ce*.

(a) They equal in form a demonstrative adjective + a personal pronoun ; *ce* does not.

(b) They agree in gender and number ; *ce* does not.

(c) They are always followed by an additional defining word or phrase ; *ce* is not necessarily so followed :

1. *Celui, qui parle en ce moment, est le Président.*

He, who is now speaking, is the President.

*Ceux qui viendront, verront.*

Those who come will see.

*Celui, dont vous parlez, est le capitaine.*

He, of whom you are speaking, is the captain.

*Celle-ci est pauvre, celle-là est riche.*

This one is poor, that one rich.

*Prenez ceux-ci et ceux-là.*

Take these and those.

2. *Ce qui fait le héros, dégrade souvent l'homme.*

(VOLTAIRE.)

That which makes the hero, often degrades the man.

*J'ai déjà dit ce qu'il faut faire, quand un enfant pleure pour avoir ceci ou cela.*

(J. J. ROUSSEAU.)

I have already said what is to be done, when a child cries to have this or that.

*Est-ce votre maison ?* Is that your house ?

*Ce sont mes frères.* Those are my brothers.

In many phrases where *ce* is used in French, the neuter it would be thought sufficiently strong in English :

*Il pleut, n'est-ce pas ?* It rains, does it not ?

*C'est mon père, monsieur.* It is my father, sir.

*Ce* may be added for emphasis, and then for the most part disappears in English :

*L'Empire, c'est la paix !* The Empire is peace !

*Qu'est-ce que c'est ?* What is it ?

*C'est un trésor qu'un ami.* A friend is a treasure.

## CHAPTER V.—ORDER OF WORDS.

## § 285. Introductory Remarks.

In French, as in English, the sense depends greatly upon the order of the words. In Latin, on the contrary, the sense is in great measure independent of the order. In French as in English—

- (a) The ordinary order is (1) Subject ; (2) Predicate.
- (b) The inverted order is (1) Predicate ; (2) Subject.
- (c) The more important adjuncts are placed before the less important, *e.g.*, the Direct object is placed before the indirect, the Indirect Object is placed before the adverbial expressions, etc.

In French, as in English, these rules of arrangement are not strictly observed, but vary according to the will of the writer, his desire to produce emphasis, harmonious periods, etc. The study of these variations belongs to Style or Rhetoric, and not to Grammar. But apart from any considerations of style, the order of words in French sentences needs some explanation, for in several details it always differs from that observed in English.

## § 286. Position of Conjunctive Personal Pronouns.

A. *Position in respect to verb.*

1. A Conjunctive Personal Pronoun as subject follows its verb—

- (a) In an interrogative sentence : \* *Parle-t-il ? Ne parle-t-il pas ?*
- (b) Usually when introducing a quotation : “ *Ami,*” *répondit-il, “ vous avez raison.”*
- (c) Usually in optative sentences without ‘*que*’ : *Puisiez-vous réussir. May you succeed.*
- (d) Usually after *ainsi, encore, toujours, peut-être, en vain, au moins, à peine*, etc. : *Toujours est-il vrai que, etc. Anyhow it is true that, etc.*

---

\* A frequent form is *est-ce que je* = *is it that I*, etc., especially when the answer *No* is expected ; such combinations as *cours-je, romps-je, mange-je*, etc., are also avoided by the use of *est-ce que je*.



2. A Conjunctive Personal Pronoun in the Accusative, Dative, or Genitive is placed after its verb, when that verb is in the Imperative mood and the sentence is affirmative, and *only then* :

Vous le recevez : *recevez-le* : ne le recevez pas.

Vous me parlez : *parlez-moi* : ne me parlez pas.

Vous en donnez : *donnez-en* : n'en donnez pas.

*B. Position in respect to each other :*

1. When the pronouns are AFTER the verb (that is, in the Imperative affirmative), the Accusative always precedes the Dative, the Dative always precedes the Genitive.\*

Dites-le-lui *Tell it him*

Dites-le-moi *Tell it me*

Parlez-lui-en *Speak to him of it*

But a second sentence in Imperative often has the pronoun in the favourite position : *Polissez-le et le repolissez : Polish it and repolish it.* (BOILEAU.)

2. When, however, the pronouns are BEFORE the verb—

(a) A reflexive pronoun precedes a non-reflexive :

Il se le promet *He promises it to himself*

Il se l'est promis *He has promised it to himself.*

(b) A dative first or second person precedes an accusative third person : person is stronger than case.

Vous me l'avez dit *You told it me*

Nous ne vous l'avons pas dit *We did not tell it you*

Me l'avez-vous promis ? *Have you promised it me ?*

Nous vous le dirons demain *We will tell it to you to-morrow*

Ne vous l'avaient-ils pas offert ? *Had they not offered it to you?*

Vous ne nous le demandez pas *You do not ask it of us*

Ne vous l'avons-nous pas défendu ? *Have we not forbidden it to you ?*

---

\* That is, the Accusative is 'preferred' to the Dative; the Dative to the Genitive. Compare the other rules: the masculine is 'preferred' to the feminine; the first person is 'preferred' to the second, the second to the third.

## § 287. Position of Adjectives.

1. Qualificative adjectives usually follow the substantive with which they are in attribution :

|                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| un chapeau noir  | a black hat     |
| un livre amusant | an amusing book |
| un livre abîmé   | a spoilt book   |

2. The following adjectives generally, but not always, go before the substantive :

|       |       |         |       |
|-------|-------|---------|-------|
| beau  | gros  | long    | petit |
| bon   | jeune | mauvais | vieux |
| grand |       | méchant |       |

*Examples of their use:*

|                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| un beau navire    | a fine ship       |
| un bon pistolet   | a good pistol     |
| une grande maison | a large house     |
| un gros caillou   | a large pebble    |
| un jeune cheval   | a young horse     |
| un long manteau   | a long cloak      |
| un mauvais fusil  | a bad gun         |
| un méchant enfant | a naughty child   |
| un petit lorgnon  | a small eye-glass |
| un vieux drapeau  | an old flag       |

3. Many adjectives, including some of those given in 2, change their meaning according to their position. But for the most part it is only with certain substantives, especially *homme* and *femme*, that the meaning changes.

The following are among the most important :—

|          |           |            |          |
|----------|-----------|------------|----------|
| affreux  | différent | jeune      | plaisant |
| bon      | divers    | maigre     | petit    |
| brave    | faux      | malheureux | propre   |
| certain  | fier      | malhonnête | seul     |
| cher     | galant    | méchant    | vilain   |
| constant | gentil    | mortel     | vrai     |
| cruel    | grand     | nouveau    |          |
| dernier  | honnête   | pauvre     |          |

*Examples of their use :*

|                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| un <i>affreux</i> homme      | a bad, terrible man            |
| un homme <i>affreux</i>      | an ugly man                    |
| un <i>bonhomme</i>           | a weak, simple man             |
| un homme <i>bon</i>          | a good, kind man               |
| un <i>brave</i> homme        | an honest man                  |
| un homme <i>brave</i>        | a brave man                    |
| un <i>cruel</i> homme        | a disagreeable, tiresome man   |
| un homme <i>cruel</i>        | a cruel man                    |
| un <i>fier</i> homme         | a fine fellow                  |
| un homme <i>fier</i>         | a proud man                    |
| un <i>galant</i> homme       | an honest man                  |
| un homme <i>galant</i>       | a ladies' man                  |
| un <i>gentilhomme</i>        | a nobleman, etc.               |
| un homme <i>gentil</i>       | an agreeable man               |
| un <i>grand</i> homme        | a great man                    |
| un homme <i>grand</i>        | a tall man                     |
| un <i>honnête</i> homme      | an upright man                 |
| un homme <i>honnête</i>      | a polite man                   |
| un <i>jeune</i> homme        | a young man                    |
| un homme <i>jeune</i>        | a youthful man                 |
| un <i>malhonnête</i> homme   | a dishonourable man            |
| un homme <i>malhonnête</i>   | a rude man                     |
| un <i>pauvre</i> homme       | a helpless, insignificant man  |
| un homme <i>pauvre</i>       | a poor man                     |
| un <i>plaisant</i> homme     | an odd man                     |
| un homme <i>plaisant</i>     | a jolly, pleasant man          |
| un <i>petit</i> homme        | a short man                    |
| un homme <i>petit</i>        | a mean fellow                  |
| un <i>vilain</i> homme       | a disagreeable, unpleasant man |
| un homme <i>vilain</i>       | an ugly man                    |
| une <i>forte</i> femme       | a strong woman                 |
| une femme <i>forte</i>       | a strong-minded woman          |
| une <i>puissante</i> femme   | a large, heavy woman           |
| une femme <i>puissante</i>   | a powerful, rich woman         |
| une <i>grande</i> dame       | a lady of rank                 |
| une dame <i>grande</i>       | a tall lady                    |
| une <i>certaine</i> nouvelle | some sort of news              |

|                                  |                                 |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| une nouvelle certaine            | an undoubted piece of news      |
| un cher frère                    | a dear brother                  |
| un habit cher                    | an expensive coat               |
| d'une commune voix               | unanimously                     |
| une voix commune                 | a vulgar, usual voice           |
| la dernière année                | the last year (of a series)     |
| l'année dernière                 | last year                       |
| différentes, diverses choses     | several, sundry things          |
| des choses diverses, différentes | different, various things       |
| une fausse clef                  | a false key                     |
| une clef fausse                  | a wrong key                     |
| de fortes eaux                   | a strong volume of water        |
| des eaux fortes                  | aquafortis                      |
| une longue-vue                   | a telescope                     |
| une vue longue                   | long sight                      |
| un maigre dîner                  | a scanty, wretched dinner       |
| un dîner maigre                  | a dinner where no meat is eaten |
| un malheureux écrivain           | a wretched author               |
| un écrivain malheureux           | an unfortunate author           |
| une méchante épigramme           | a poor epigram                  |
| une épigramme méchante           | a wicked epigram                |
| durant de mortelles années       | during long, tedious, sad years |
| une blessure mortelle            | a mortal wound                  |
| un nouveau chapeau               | another hat                     |
| un chapeau nouveau               | a new-style hat                 |
| un pauvre poète                  | an indifferent poet             |
| un poète pauvre                  | a poor poet                     |
| un plaisant conte                | an absurd tale                  |
| un conte plaisant                | an amusing tale                 |
| son propre uniforme              | his own uniform                 |
| son uniforme propre              | his clean uniform               |
| un simple soldat                 | a private                       |
| un soldat simple                 | a simple-minded soldier         |
| un unique poème                  | an only poem                    |
| un poème unique                  | a poem unequalled               |
| une vraie histoire               | a downright falsehood           |
| une histoire vraie               | a true history                  |

etc., etc.

## § 288. Position of Adverbs.

1. Such interrogative adverbs as *comment*, *combien*, *pourquoi*, *quand*, *où*, etc., are placed before the verb, as in English:

*Comment vous portez-vous ?*

*Combien d'argent a cet homme ?*

2. Ordinary adverbs are usually placed

(a) After the verb in simple tenses :

*Il vient souvent*

*Il travaille très bien*

(b) Between the auxiliary and the past participle in compound tenses :

*Il est souvent venu*

*Il a très bien travaillé*

3. *Hier*, *aujourd'hui*, *demain*, etc., and adverbial expressions, usually follow the verb :

*Il est venu hier*

*Il a travaillé avec beaucoup de courage*

4. The above rules are not strictly followed ; a change in the position of the adverb is often made to produce emphasis :

*Souvent il vient*

*Souvent il est venu*

*Hier il est venu*

5. The only position that the adverb may *not* occupy is between the subject and the verb, its favourite place in English :

*He rarely comes*

*Il vient rarement*

*He often comes*

*Il vient souvent*

6. The adverbs of negation consist usually of two parts, of which one is always "*ne*" when a verb is present.\* (§ 434.)

(a) *Ne* always precedes the verb :

*Il ne travaille pas*

*Il n'a pas travaillé*

(b) Both parts usually precede in the infinitive mood :

*Ne pas travailler*

*Ne jamais travailler*

---

\* In *La Fontaine*, etc., *ne* is sometimes left out ; this must not be imitated.

## APPENDIX I.

ALPHABETICAL list of most of the words and endings given on pp. 43—52, which break the 'rule of *e mute*' because of the etymology.

|                              |    |            |             |    |
|------------------------------|----|------------|-------------|----|
| acte                         | m. | action     | actus*      | m. |
| adverbe                      | m. | adverb     | adverbium   | n. |
| -age                         | m. |            |             |    |
| -aire                        | m. |            |             |    |
| -aison                       | f. |            |             |    |
| angle                        | m. | angle      | ángulus     | m. |
| animaleule                   | m. | animaleule | animal      | n. |
| antidote                     | m. | antidote   | ἀντίδοτον   | n. |
| antre                        | m. | cave       | antrum      | n. |
| arbuste                      | m. | shrub      | arbustum    | n. |
| article                      | m. | article    | articulus   | m. |
| artifice                     | m. | artifice   | artificium  | n. |
| asile                        | m. | asylum     | asylum      | n. |
| -asme                        | m. |            |             |    |
| astre                        | m. | star       | astrum      | n. |
| augure                       | m. | augury     | augurium    | n. |
| -aume                        | m. |            |             |    |
| automate                     | m. | automaton  | αὐτόματον   | n. |
| baromètre, <i>vide</i> mètre |    |            | barometer   |    |
| baume                        | m. | balm       | balsamum    | n. |
| bénéfice                     | m. | benefice   | beneficium  | n. |
| beurre                       | m. | butter     | butyrum     | n. |
| boisson                      | f. | drink      | bibitionem  | f. |
| buffle                       | m. | buffalo    | bubulus     | m. |
| buste                        | m. | bust       | busto (It.) | m. |

\* See "Student's French Grammar," p. 491, for the reason that sometimes the Latin Accusative is given, sometimes the Nominative.

|                                |    |             |                 |    |
|--------------------------------|----|-------------|-----------------|----|
| câble                          | m. | cable       | capulus         | m. |
| cadavre                        | m. | corpse      | cadaver         | n. |
| calice                         | m. | calyx       | calicem         | m. |
| cancre                         | m. | cancer      | cancer          | m. |
| candélabre                     | m. | candelabrum | candelabrum     | n. |
| cantique                       | m. | canticle    | canticum        | n. |
| caprice                        | m. | caprice     | capriccio (It.) | m. |
| caractère                      | m. | disposition | character       | m. |
| casque                         | m. | helmet      | casco (It.)     | m. |
| catalogue                      | m. | catalogue   | κατάλογος       | m. |
| cautère                        | m. | cautery     | cauterium       | n. |
| centre                         | m. | centre      | centrum         | n. |
| chair                          | f. | flesh       | carnem          | f. |
| chanson                        | f. | song        | cantionem       | f. |
| chanvre                        | m. | hemp        | cannabum        | n. |
| charme                         | m. | charm       | carmen          | n. |
| chaux                          | f. | lime        | calx            | f. |
| cidre                          | m. | cidre       | σίκερα          | n. |
| cierge                         | m. | taper       | cereus          | m. |
| cimetière                      | m. | cemetery    | coemeterium     | n. |
| cirque                         | m. | circus      | circus          | m. |
| clef                           | f. | key         | clavem          | f. |
| cloison                        | f. | partition   | clausionem      | f. |
| cloître                        | m. | cloister    | claustrum       | n. |
| codicille                      | m. | codicil     | codicillus      | m. |
| coffre                         | m. | trunk       | cophinus        | m. |
| commerce                       | m. | commerce    | commercium      | n. |
| concile                        | m. | council     | concilium       | n. |
| concombre                      | m. | cucumber    | cucumerem       | m. |
| cône                           | m. | cone        | conus           | m. |
| contraste                      | m. | contrast    | contrasto (It.) | m. |
| contrefaçon, <i>vide</i> façon |    |             |                 |    |
| corpuscule                     | m. | corpuscule  | corpusculum     | n. |
| coude                          | m. | elbow       | cubitus         | m. |
| cour                           | f. | court       | cohortem        | f. |
| couvercle                      | m. | lid         | cooperculum     | n. |
| crabe                          | m. | crab        | carabus         | m. |
| crible                         | m. | sieve       | cribrum         | n. |
| crime                          | m. | crime       | crimen          | n. |
| crocodile                      | m. | crocodile   | crocodilus      | m. |
| croix                          | f. | cross       | crux            | f. |

|                             |           |                |                           |           |
|-----------------------------|-----------|----------------|---------------------------|-----------|
| cube                        | <i>m.</i> | cube           | cubus                     | <i>m.</i> |
| cuisson                     | <i>f.</i> | cooking        | coctionem                 | <i>f.</i> |
| culte                       | <i>m.</i> | worship        | cultus                    | <i>m.</i> |
| cygne                       | <i>m.</i> | swan           | cygnus                    | <i>m.</i> |
| cylindre                    | <i>m.</i> | cylinder       | cylindrus                 | <i>m.</i> |
| dédale                      | <i>m.</i> | labyrinth      | δαίδαλος                  | <i>m.</i> |
| délire                      | <i>m.</i> | delirium       | delirium                  | <i>n.</i> |
| désordre, <i>vide</i> ordre |           |                |                           |           |
| dialogue                    | <i>m.</i> | dialogue       | διαλογος                  | <i>m.</i> |
| divorce                     | <i>m.</i> | divorce        | divortium                 | <i>n.</i> |
| domaine                     | <i>m.</i> | domain         | dominium                  | <i>n.</i> |
| domicile                    | <i>m.</i> | house          | domicilium                | <i>n.</i> |
| dot                         | <i>f.</i> | dowry          | dotem                     | <i>f.</i> |
| drame                       | <i>m.</i> | drama          | δράμα                     | <i>n.</i> |
| eau                         | <i>f.</i> | water          | aqua                      | <i>f.</i> |
| édifice                     | <i>m.</i> | edifice        | aedificium                | <i>n.</i> |
| -ége                        |           |                |                           |           |
| empire                      | <i>m.</i> | empire         | imperium                  | <i>n.</i> |
| emplâtre                    | <i>m.</i> | plaster (med.) | emplastrum                | <i>n.</i> |
| équilibre                   | <i>m.</i> | equilibrium    | aequilibrium              | <i>n.</i> |
| esclandre                   | <i>m.</i> | scandal        | scandalum                 | <i>n.</i> |
| évangile                    | <i>m.</i> | gospel         | evangelium                | <i>n.</i> |
| façon                       | <i>f.</i> | workmanship    | factionem                 | <i>f.</i> |
| faim                        | <i>f.</i> | hunger         | famem                     | <i>f.</i> |
| fatte                       | <i>m.</i> | height         | fastigium                 | <i>n.</i> |
| faste                       | <i>m.</i> | pomp           | fastus                    | <i>m.</i> |
| fin                         | <i>f.</i> | end            | finem                     | <i>f.</i> |
| fleuve                      | <i>m.</i> | river          | fluvius                   | <i>m.</i> |
| foi                         | <i>f.</i> | faith          | fidem                     | <i>f.</i> |
| foie                        | <i>m.</i> | liver          | ficatum(jecur)* <i>n.</i> |           |
| fois                        | <i>f.</i> | time           | vices                     | <i>f.</i> |
| forêt                       | <i>f.</i> | forest         | foresta                   | <i>f.</i> |
| génie                       | <i>m.</i> | genius         | genius                    | <i>m.</i> |
| genre                       | <i>m.</i> | gender         | genus                     | <i>n.</i> |
| geste                       | <i>m.</i> | gesture        | gestus                    | <i>m.</i> |
| girofle                     | <i>m.</i> | clove          | caryophyllum              | <i>n.</i> |
| gîte                        | <i>m.</i> | resting-place  | gistum                    | <i>n.</i> |
| glaive                      | <i>m.</i> | sword          | gladius                   | <i>m.</i> |
| globe                       | <i>m.</i> | globe          | globus                    | <i>m.</i> |

\* See "Student's French Grammar," page 155.



|            |    |           |              |    |
|------------|----|-----------|--------------|----|
| glu        | f. | birdlime  | glutem       | f. |
| golfe      | m. | gulf      | κόλπος       | m. |
| gouffre    | m. | abysm     | κόλπος       | m. |
| grade      | m. | rank      | gradus       | m. |
| granule    | m. | granule   | granulum     | n. |
| groupe     | m. | group     | grappo (It.) | m. |
| homicide   | m. | homicide  | homicidium   | n. |
| hospice    | m. | hospital  | hospitium    | n. |
| -ige       |    |           |              |    |
| incendie   | m. | fire      | incendium    | n. |
| insecte    | m. | insect    | insectum     | n. |
| -ien       | f. |           |              |    |
| -isme      | m. |           |              |    |
| jeûne      | m. | fast      | jejunium     | n. |
| labyrinthe | m. | labyrinth | λαβύρινθος   | m. |
| leçon      | f. | lesson    | lectionem    | f. |
| légume     | m. | vegetable | legumen      | n. |
| linge      | m. | linen     | linteum      | n. |
| loi        | f. | law       | legem        | f. |
| luxe       | m. | luxury    | luxus        | m. |
| lycée      | m. | lyceum    | lyceum       | n. |
| main       | f. | hand      | manus        | f. |
| mérite     | m. | merit     | meritum      | n. |
| météore    | m. | meteor    | μετέωρος     | m. |
| mètre      | m. |           | μέτρον       | n. |
| ministère  | m. | ministry  | ministerium  | n. |
| miracle    | m. | miracle   | miraculum    | n. |
| moisson    | f. | harvest   | messionem    | f. |
| monde      | m. | world     | mundus       | m. |
| monstre    | m. | monster   | monstrum     | n. |
| monticule  | m. | hillock   | monticulus   | m. |
| mort       | f. | death     | mortem       | f. |
| murmure    | m. | murmur    | murmur       | n. |
| musée      | m. | museum    | museum       | n. |
| mystère    | m. | mystery   | mysterium    | n. |
| mythe      | m. | myth      | μῦθος        | m. |
| narcisse   | m. | narcissus | narcissus    | m. |
| nef        | f. | nave      | navem        | f. |
| négoce     | m. | trade     | negotium     | n. |
| noix       | f. | nut       | nux          | f. |
| nombre     | m. | number    | numerus      | m. |

|            |           |              |                  |           |
|------------|-----------|--------------|------------------|-----------|
| nuit       | <i>f.</i> | night        | noctem           | <i>f.</i> |
| oasis      | <i>f.</i> | oasis        | ὄασις            | <i>f.</i> |
| -oge       |           |              |                  |           |
| -oire      |           |              |                  |           |
| -ome, ôme  |           |              |                  |           |
| ordre      | <i>m.</i> | order        | ordinem          | <i>m.</i> |
| organe     | <i>m.</i> | organ (body) | organum          | <i>n.</i> |
| pacte      | <i>m.</i> | agreement    | pactum           | <i>n.</i> |
| paix       | <i>f.</i> | peace        | pax              | <i>f.</i> |
| panache    | <i>m.</i> | plume        | pannacchio (It.) | <i>m.</i> |
| paradoxe   | <i>m.</i> | paradox      | παράδοξον        | <i>n.</i> |
| participe  | <i>m.</i> | participle   | participium      | <i>n.</i> |
| part       | <i>f.</i> | part         | partem           | <i>f.</i> |
| patrimoine | <i>m.</i> | patrimony    | patrimonium      | <i>n.</i> |
| peau       | <i>f.</i> | skin         | pellem           | <i>f.</i> |
| peigne     | <i>m.</i> | comb         | pectinem         | <i>m.</i> |
| peuple     | <i>m.</i> | people       | populus          | <i>m.</i> |
| phare      | <i>m.</i> | light-house  | φάρος            | <i>m.</i> |
| phénomène  | <i>m.</i> | phenomenon   | φαινόμενον       | <i>n.</i> |
| plâtre     | <i>m.</i> | plaster      | emplastrum       | <i>n.</i> |
| poivre     | <i>m.</i> | pepper       | piper            | <i>n.</i> |
| poix       | <i>f.</i> | pitch        | pix              | <i>f.</i> |
| pôle       | <i>m.</i> | pole         | polus            | <i>m.</i> |
| pore       | <i>m.</i> | pore         | porus            | <i>m.</i> |
| pouce      | <i>m.</i> | thumb        | pollicem         | <i>m.</i> |
| précepte   | <i>m.</i> | precept      | præceptum        | <i>n.</i> |
| précipice  | <i>m.</i> | precipice    | præcipitium      | <i>n.</i> |
| principe   | <i>m.</i> | principle    | principium       | <i>n.</i> |
| prison     | <i>f.</i> | prison       | prehensionem     | <i>f.</i> |
| programme  | <i>m.</i> | programme    | πρόγραμμα        | <i>n.</i> |
| prône      | <i>m.</i> | sermon       | præconium        | <i>n.</i> |
| proverbe   | <i>m.</i> | proverb      | proverbium       | <i>n.</i> |
| pupitre    | <i>m.</i> | desk         | pulpitum         | <i>n.</i> |
| rançon     | <i>f.</i> | ransom       | redemptionem     | <i>f.</i> |
| régime     | <i>m.</i> | rule         | regimen          | <i>n.</i> |
| régistre   | <i>m.</i> | register     | regestum         | <i>n.</i> |
| règne      | <i>m.</i> | reign        | regnum           | <i>n.</i> |
| remède     | <i>m.</i> | remedy       | remedium         | <i>n.</i> |
| rhume      | <i>m.</i> | cold         | ῥεῦμα            | <i>n.</i> |
| risque     | <i>m.</i> | risk         | risco (Sp.)      | <i>m.</i> |
| sable      | <i>m.</i> | sand         | sabulum          | <i>n.</i> |

|             |    |            |                   |        |
|-------------|----|------------|-------------------|--------|
| sacre       | m. | coronation | sacrum            | m.     |
| sceptre     | m. | sceptre    | sceptrum          | n.     |
| seigle      | m. | rye        | secale            | n.     |
| sépia       | f. | sepia      | sepia             | f.     |
| sépulchre   | m. | sepulchre  | sepulchrum        | n.     |
| service     | m. | service    | servitium         | n.     |
| sexe        | m. | sex        | sexus             | m.     |
| siècle      | m. | century    | saeculum          | n.     |
| signe       | m. | sign       | signum            | n.     |
| silence     | m. | silence    | silentium         | n.     |
| site        | m. | site       | situs             | m.     |
| soif        | f. | thirst     | sitim             | f.     |
| songe       | m. | dream      | somnium           | n.     |
| squelette   | n. | skeleton   | σκελετόν          | n.     |
| style       | m. | style      | stylus            | m.     |
| -té -tié    | f. |            |                   |        |
| temple      | m. | temple     | templum           | n.     |
| théâtre     | m. | theatre    | theatrum          | n.     |
| timbre      | m. | stamp      | tympanum          | n.     |
| toison      | f. | fleece     | tonsionem         | f.     |
| tonnerre    | m. | thunder    | tonitrus          | m.     |
| toux        | f. | cough      | tussis            | f.     |
| trahison    | f. | treason    | traditionem       | f.     |
| trapèze     | m. | trapezium  | trapezium         | n.     |
| trèfle      | m. | clover     | trifolium         | n.     |
| tribu       | f. | tribe      | tribus            | f.     |
| trône       | m. | throne     | thronus           | m.     |
| tube        | m. | tube       | tubus             | m.     |
| tumulte     | m. | tumult     | tumultus          | m.     |
| -uge        |    |            |                   |        |
| verbe       | m. | verb       | verbum            | n.     |
| vermicelle  | m. | vermicelli | vermicelli (It.)  | pl. m. |
| verre       | m. | glass      | vitrum            | n.     |
| vertu       | f. | virtue     | virtutem          | f.     |
| vice        | m. | vice       | vitium            | n.     |
| villa       | f. | villa      | villa             | f.     |
| violoncelle | m. | bass-viol. | violoncello (It.) | m.     |
| vis         | f. | screw      | vitis             | f.     |
| voix        | f. | voice      | vox               | f.     |
| volume      | m. | volume     | volumen           | n.     |
| zèle        | m. | zeal       | zelus             | m.     |

## APPENDIX II.

Alphabetical list of Principal Parts of Verbs on pp. 84—121.

|           |            |            |              |          |
|-----------|------------|------------|--------------|----------|
| acquérir  | acquérant  | j'acquièrs | j'acquis     | acquis   |
| aller     | allant     | je vais    | j'allai      | allé     |
| appeler   | appelant   | j'appelle  | j'appelai    | appelé   |
| arriver   | arrivant   | j'arrive   | j'arrivai    | arrivé   |
| assaillir | assaillant | j'assaille | j'assailis   | assailli |
| asseoir   | asseyant   | j'assieds  | j'assis      | assis    |
| avancer   | avançant   | j'avance   | j'avançai    | avancé   |
| avoir     | ayant      | j'ai       | j'eus        | eu       |
| battre    | battant    | je bats    | je battis    | battu    |
| boire     | buvant     | je bois    | je bus       | bu       |
| bouillir  | bouillant  | je bous    | je bouillis  | bouilli  |
| conclure  | concluant  | je conclus | je conclus   | conclu   |
| conduire  | conduisant | je conduis | je conduisis | conduit  |
| coudre    | cousant    | je couds   | je cousis    | cousu    |
| courir    | courant    | je cours   | je courus    | couru    |
| croire    | croyant    | je crois   | je crus      | cru      |
| cueillir  | cueillant  | je cueille | je cueillis  | cueilli  |
| devoir    | devant     | je dois    | je dus       | dû       |
| dire      | disant     | je dis     | je dis       | dit      |
| écrire    | écrivant   | j'écris    | j'écrivis    | écrit    |
| employer  | employant  | j'emploie  | j'employai   | employé  |
| envoyer   | envoyant   | j'envoie   | j'envoyai    | envoyé   |
| être      | étant      | je suis    | je fus       | été      |
| faire     | faisant    | je fais    | je fis       | fait     |
| falloir   |            | il faut    | il fallut    | fallu    |
| finir     | finissant  | je finis   | je finis     | fini     |

|                              |            |           |             |        |
|------------------------------|------------|-----------|-------------|--------|
| fuir                         | fuyant     | je fuis   | je fuis     | fui    |
| jeter                        | jetant     | je jette  | je jetai    | jeté   |
| lire                         | lisant     | je lis    | je lus      | lu     |
| manger                       | mangeant   | je mange  | je mangeai  | mangé  |
| mener                        | menant     | je mène   | je menai    | mené   |
| mettre                       | mettant    | je mets   | je mis      | mis    |
| moudre                       | moulant    | je mouds  | je moulus   | moulu  |
| mourir                       | mourant    | je meurs  | je mourus   | mort   |
| mouvoir                      | mouvant    | je meus   | je mus      | mu     |
| naître                       | naissant   | je nais   | je naquis   | né     |
| ouvrir                       | ouvrant    | j'ouvre   | j'ouvris    | ouvert |
| paraître                     | paraissant | je paraïs | je parus    | paru   |
| peindre                      | peignant   | je peins  | je peignis  | peint  |
| pleuvoir                     |            | il pleut  | il plut     | plu    |
| porter                       | portant    | je porte  | je portai   | porté  |
| pourvoir, <i>see</i> voir    |            |           |             |        |
| pouvoir                      | pouvant    | je peux   | je pus      | pu     |
| prendre                      | prenant    | je prends | je pris     | pris   |
| prévaloir, <i>see</i> valoir |            |           |             |        |
| recevoir                     | recevant   | je reçois | je reçus    | reçu   |
| répéter                      | répétant   | je répète | je répétai  | répété |
| résoudre                     | résolvant  | je résous | je résolus  | résolu |
| rire                         | riant      | je ris    | je ris      | ri     |
| savoir                       | sachant    | je sais   | je sus      | su     |
| sentir                       | sentant    | je sens   | je sentis   | senti  |
| suivre                       | suivant    | je suis   | je suivis   | suivi  |
| taire                        | taisant    | je tais   | je tus      | tu     |
| tenir                        | tenant     | je tiens  | je tins     | tenu   |
| traire                       | trayant    | je traïs  |             | trait  |
| vaincre                      | vainquant  | je vains  | je vainquis | vaincu |
| valoir                       | valant     | je vaux   | je valus    | valu   |
| vendre                       | vendant    | je vends  | je vendis   | vendu  |
| vêtir                        | vêtant     | je vêts   | je vêtis    | vêtu   |
| vivre                        | vivant     | je vis    | je vécus    | vécu   |
| vouloir                      | voulant    | je veux   | je voulus   | voulu  |
| voir                         | voyant     | je vois   | je vis      | vu     |

# INDEX.

\*.\* The numbers refer to sections, and not to pages.

- A**
- a*, sounded as in key-word *fatigue*, 23
- a*, sounded as in key-word *fâchez*, 24
- d* in past simple ind. and subj., how pronounced, 24
- a*, fem. nouns in, 101
- a*, only cut off in "*la*," 49
- abaisser* (*s'*) (*à*), 259
- abbé*, *abbesse*, 95
- à bon marché*, 231
- aboutir* (*à*) 259
- absoudre*, 205, note
- absous*, fem. of, 87
- Abstract subst. in -*eur*, gender of, 107
- abstenir* (*s'*) (*de*), 258
- à cause de*, 237, 238
- à cause que*, 241
- ACCENT, where laid in French, 14, 4; in English, 14, 3
- „ French, in English words, 17
- ACCENT (phrase) 15
- ACCENTS (graphic), 10-13, 16
- ACCENT, or double consonant in tonic syllable, 219
- „ circumflex, in verbs in -*ître* and -*oltre*, 221
- accessit*, plural of, 91
- accoutumer* (*s'*) (*à*), 259
- accourir*, takes *avoir* or *être*, 217
- accroc*, *c* silent in, 72
- accrotte*, takes *être* or *avoir*, 217
- accusateur*, fem. of, 95
- Accusative of pronouns precedes the dative, 513, *β*.
- accusatrice*, masculine of, 95
- accuser* (*de*), 258
- acharner* (*s'*) (*à*), 259
- acheter*, 219
- achever* (*de*), 258
- à condition que*, 241
- aconit*, *t* in, sounded, 57
- à côté*, 229, 233
- à côté de*, 237
- à couvert de*, 237
- acquérir*, 208
- acquiers*, see *acquérir*
- acquerrai*, „
- acquis*, „
- acte*, gender of, 126
- action*, *ti* in, how sounded, 57, note
- 'Active,' meaning of, in French Grammar, 173, 249
- actuellement*, 228
- Acute accent, 13, 203
- à dessein*, 231
- ADJECTIVES, 85
- „ fem. of, 87
- „ plural of, 88
- „ comparison of, 131
- Adjectives and Nouns, agreement of, 246, 247
- „ position of in sentence, 287
- Adjectival Poss. Pron., 149, 150
- „ Demonstr. Pron., 152, 153
- „ Indef. Pron., 160, 161
- „ subordinate sentences, 263, 265
- à droite*, 229, 233
- ADVERBS, how classified 228-232
- „ formation of, 233
- „ comparison of, 234
- „ position of, in sentence, 288
- Adverbial subordinate sentences, 263, 266
- adverbe*, gender of, 112
- affecter* (*de*), 258
- affliger* (*s'*) (*de*), 258
- affreux*, change of meaning according to position, 287
- afin que*, 241
- „ subjunctive after, 266
- à fleur de*, 237
- à force de*, 237
- à gauche*, 229
- age*, masc. ending, 117
- àge*, circumflex accent in, 10

<sup>a</sup>*genda*, plural noun used as singular, 91  
*ai*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 28  
*ai* in closed tonic syllable, pronunciation of, 28  
*ai* in *faire*, pronunciation of, 28, 209  
*aie* (j'), see *avoir*  
*aieul*, plural of, 88, 140  
*-ail*, plural of nouns in, 88  
*aile*, *l* in, how sounded, 67, note  
*ailleurs*, 229  
*aimer mieux*, not followed by a preposition, 257  
*aimer* (à), 259  
*aimèrent*, en silent in, 37  
*aime-t-il*, 50, 216  
*-ain*, *aim*, pronunciation of symbols, 38  
*-aindre*, verbs in, 223  
*ainsi*, 231  
*ainsi que*, 241  
*-aire*, masculine nouns in, 124  
*ait* (il), see *avoir*  
*-âtre*, verbs in, 221  
*à jamais*, 228  
*-al*, plural of words in, 88, 140  
*à l'* used instead of *au*, à *la*, 86  
*à la bonne heure*, 242  
*à l'abri de*, 237  
*à la faveur de*, 237  
*à la manière de*, 237  
*à la merci de*, 237, 238  
*à la mode de*, 237  
*à la réserve de*, 237  
*à l'anglaise*, 233  
*à l'avenir*, 233  
*à l'égard de*, 237  
*alentour*, 229  
*à l'exception de*, 237  
*alibi*, plural of, 91  
*à l'instant*, 233  
*à l'insu de*, 237  
*alléluia*, plural of, 91  
*aller*, conjugation of, 209  
 „ takes *être* in compound tenses, 183, 217

*aller*, not followed by a preposition, 461, 475  
*almanach*, pronunciation of *ch* in, 55  
*alors*, 233  
*Alphabet*, 5, 6  
 „ imperfection of, how remedied, 19  
*-als*, persistence of, in plural of Modern French adj. and subs., 140  
*alto*, plural of, 91  
*ambassadeur*, fem. of, 95  
*ambitieux*, pronunciation of *ti* in, 57, note  
*ambitionner* (de), 258  
*amer*, *e* in, 27  
 „ pronunciation of, 65  
*à mesure que*, 241  
*amical*, plural of, 140  
*à midi*, 233  
*à moins que*, 241  
 „ subjunctive after, 266  
*amuser* (s') (à), 259  
*an*, *am*, value of symbols in pronunciation, 34, 37  
*-anc*, *c* silent in ending, 71  
*âne*, fem. of, 95  
*angle*, gender of, 120  
*animalcule*, gender of, 120  
*Anomalous verbs*, 204  
*Anomalous agreement*, instances of, 254  
*antérieur*, fem. of, 87  
*antidote*, gender of, 186  
*aoté*, *aoté*, how pronounced, 23  
*aparté*, plural of, 91  
*à peu près*, 231  
*à peine*, 233  
*apercevoir*, 193  
*apothicaire*, fem. use of, 141  
*apôtre*, fem. use of, 141  
*apparaître*, takes *être* or *avoir*, 217  
*appartenant*, frequent agreement of, 249, note  
*appartenir* (de), 258  
*appendice*, gender of, 113

*applaudir* (s') (de), 258  
*appliquer* (s') (à), 259  
*Apposition*, agreement in, 251  
 „ no article before words used in, 281, 3  
*appréhender* (de), 258  
*apprendre* (à), 259  
*apprêter* (s') (à), 259  
*approchant*, frequent agreement of, 249, note  
*après-midi*, plural of, 92  
*après que*, 241  
*à présent*, 228, 233  
*arbre*, gender of, 124  
*arbuste*, gender of, 126  
*arc-en-ciel*, plural of, 92  
*à rebours de*, 237  
*à reculons*, 233  
*armoire*, gender of, 124  
*arrière-pensée*, plural of, 92, 142A  
*arriver* takes *être* in compound tenses, 183, 217  
*Articles*, 86  
 „ uses of, 280—282  
*article*, gender of word, 120  
*artifice*, gender of, 118  
*artiste*, fem. use of, 141  
*-as*, masc. adjectival ending, 87  
*asile*, gender of, 120  
*-asme*, masc. ending, 121  
*aspirer* (à), 259  
*assaille* (j'), no *s* in, 215  
*assaillir*, 205  
*assaus* (j'), see *assaillir*  
*asseoir*, 209  
*asseyant*, see *asseoir*  
*asseye*, see *asseoir*  
*assez*, 231  
*assieds*, see *asseoir*  
*assirai*, see *asseoir*  
*assis*, see *asseoir*  
*assurément*, 232, 233  
*asthme*, how pronounced, 75  
*astre*, gender of, 124  
*athée*, fem. use of, 141  
*athlète*, fem. use of, 141  
*Atonic vowels*, 14, 5

*à travers*, 236  
*attacher* (s') (à), 259  
*attendant*, 236  
*attendre* (s') (à), 259  
*attendre* (s'), subjunctive after, 264  
*attendu que*, 241  
*-au*, singular substantival ending, 88  
*au bas de*, 238  
*au cas que*, 241  
*au côté de*, 237  
*aucun*, 160, 162  
*au delà de*, 237  
*au dedans*, 229  
*au dedans de*, 237  
*au défaut de*, 236  
*au dehors*, 229  
*au dehors de*, 237  
*au delà*, 229  
*au delà de*, 236  
*au dépens de*, 237  
*au dessous de*, 237  
*au dessus de*, 237  
*au devant de*, 236  
*auditoire*, gender of, 124  
*augmenter* (s') (à), 259  
*augure*, gender of, 124  
*aujourd'hui*, 228  
 „ position of, 288  
*au lieu de*, whence obtained, 236, 237  
*au lieu que*, 241  
*au milieu de*, 237  
*au moins*, 231  
*au moyen de*, 237  
*aune*, double gender of, 99  
*au niveau de*, 237,  
*auparavant*, 228  
*au plus*, 231  
*auprès*, 229  
*auprès de*, 237  
*au péril de*, 237  
*au prix de*, 237  
*aurai*, *au* how sounded in, 34  
*aurai*, see *avoir*  
*au risque de*, 237  
*aussi*, 231  
*aussitôt*, 228  
*aussitôt que*, 241  
*autant*, 231

*autant que*, 241  
*auteur*, fem. use of, 141  
*auto-da-fé*, plural of, 91  
*autour de*, 237  
*autocrate*, fem. use of, 141  
*automate*, gender of, 126  
*autoriser* (à), 259  
*au travers de*, 237  
*autre*, 161, 162, 167  
*autrefois*, 228  
*autre part*, 229  
*autrui*, 162, 167  
*aux environs de*, 237  
*Auxiliaries of mood*, 176  
*Auxiliaries of tense*, 176, note  
*Auxiliaries of tense, with intransitive verbs*, 217  
*aval*, adverb, 233  
*avant*, 228  
*avant-hier*, 228  
*avant-poste*, plural of, 92  
*avant que*, 241  
 „ subjunctive after, 266  
*avé*, plural of, 91  
*avec*, 236  
*avec, c in*, 27  
*avertir* (de), 258  
*aveuglement*, 233  
*avis*, plural of, 91  
*aviser* (s') (de), 258  
*avoir*, conjugation of, 188, 209  
 „ how employed to form future, 213  
 „ its use as an auxiliary, 188  
 „ use of with intransitive verbs, 217  
 „ (à), 259  
*avouer*, not followed by a preposition, 257  
*avril*, *l* silent in, 67  
*ayant*, see *avoir*

## B

*b* and *p* compared, 45  
*b*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 62  
*baill*, plural of, 88

*bailleresse*, masc. of, 95  
*baillieur*, fem. of, 95  
*bal*, plural of, 140  
*balancer* (à), 259  
*balloon*, French accent in, 17  
*bancal*, plural of, 140  
*baptême*, pronunciation of, 61  
 „ gender of, 121  
*baril*, *l* silent in, 67  
*baromètre*, gender of, 124  
*bas*, adverb, 233  
*basse-cour*, plural of, 92  
*bastion*, *t* in, how sounded, 57, note  
 „ gender of, 106  
*bat* (il), see *battre*  
*battre*, 205  
*battis*, see *battre*  
*battu*, see *battre*  
*baume*, gender of, 121  
*-be*, masc. words ending in, 112  
*beau*, *bel*, fem. of, 87, 137  
*beau*, precedes the substantive, 287  
*beaucoup*, 231  
 „ comparison of, 234  
*beau-frère*, plural of, 92  
*bécasse*, gender of, 141A  
*becqueter*, 219  
*bel*, used instead of *beau*, 87  
*bellot*, fem. of, 87  
*bélier*, fem. form of, 95  
*bénéfice*, gender of, 113  
*béni*, *bénit*, compared, 227  
*bénir*, 227  
*beurre*, gender of, 124  
*bibitionem*, gender of, 246  
*biceps*, *p* in, 61, note  
 „ *s* in, 59, note  
*biche*, masc. form of, 95  
*bien*, 231  
 „ comparison of, 234  
*bien que*, 241  
 „ subjunctive after, 266  
*bientôt*, 228  
*bijou*, plural of, 88  
*bis*, pronunciation of, 59



*blâme*, gender of, 121  
*blâmer (de)*, 258  
*blanc*, fem. of, 87  
*bleu*, plural of, 88, note  
*blocus*, pronunciation of, 59  
*bœuf*, *bœufs*, pronunciation of, 63  
*boire*, 207  
*boisson*, gender of, 106  
*bon*, adjective, change of meaning according to position, 287  
 „ compared, 131  
 „ adverb, 233  
*bonheur*, plural of, 92  
*bonhomme*, plural of, 92  
*borner (à)*, 259  
*bouc*, fem. form of, 95  
*bouillir*, 205  
*bourdaine*, gender of, 98, 2  
*bous*, see *bouillir*  
*brave*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*brayant*, see *braire*  
*brebis*, masc. form of, 95  
*bref*, adverb, 233  
*brièvement*, 233  
*brûler (de)*, 258  
*brunette*, 17  
*brut*, pronunciation of, 57  
*buffle*, gender of, 141A  
*bus*, see *boire*  
*buste*, gender of, 126  
*but*, pronunciation of, 57  
*buvant*, *buvions*, etc., see *boire*

## C

*c*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 70  
*c* before *a*, *o*, *u*, 71  
*c* „ *e*, *i*, *y*, 71  
*c* with *cedilla*, 71  
*ça et là*, 229  
*cable*, gender of, 120  
*cadavre*, gender of, 124  
*cadet*, how accented in English, 17  
*cadre*, gender of, 124

*caduc*, fem. of, 87  
*cage*, gender of, 117, note  
*caillon*, plural of, 88  
*calibre*, gender of, 124  
*calice*, gender of, 113  
*calme*, gender of, 121  
*camphre*, gender of, 124  
*can*, rendered by *pouvoir*, 178  
*canal*, accent in English, 17  
*candélabre*, gender of, 124  
*cane*, masc. of, 95  
*cantatrice*, masc. of, 95  
*cantique*, gender of, 127  
*cap*, pronunciation of, 61  
*caprice*, gender of, 113  
*car*, conjunction, 239  
*caractère*, gender of, 124  
*Cardinal numbers*, 132  
*carnaval*, plural of, 140  
*carrosse*, gender of, 125  
*cartoon*, influence of French accent in, 17  
*cascade*, how accented in English, 17  
*Cases in Old French*, 139  
*Case-endings of Latin*, disappeared in French, 84, obs.  
*Case-endings in pronouns*, 84, obs.  
*casque*, gender of, 127  
*catalogue*, gender of, 127  
*catéchisme*, gender of, 121  
*Causal conjunctions*, 241, 286  
*cautère*, gender of, 124  
*cavalier*, how accented in English, 17  
*-ce*, masc. nouns ending in, 113  
*ce*, adj. dem. pron., 153  
 „ can take a plural verb, 253  
 „ corresponds to *it*, 284  
 „ added for emphasis, 284  
*Cedilla*, use of, 202, 208  
*celer*, 219  
*celui*, subst. dem. pron., 154  
 „ uses of, 284

*cent*, when it takes *s*, 132  
*cent fois*, 230  
*centre*, gender of, 124  
*cependant*, 239  
*cérémonial*, plural of, 140  
*cerf*, fem. form of, 95, *a*  
*cerf-volant*, *f* silent in, 63  
*certain*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*certainement*, 232  
*certes*, adverb, 232  
 „ *e* in, 27  
*cesser*, takes *avoir* or *être*, 217  
 „ (*de*), 258  
*cet*, 48, 153  
*ch* in a syllable, 7  
 „ sounded as in model, word *chou*, 44  
 „ in *chemin* compared with *j* in *jeter*, 45, 55  
 „ sounded as *k*, 55  
*chacal*, plural of, 140  
*chacun*, subst. indef. pron., 162  
*chagrin*, accent in English, 17  
*chair*, gender of, 107  
*châle*, gender of, 120  
*chandelier*, how accented in English, 17  
*change*, gender of, 117  
*chanson*, gender of, 106  
*chanteur*, fem. of, 95  
*chanvre*, gender of, 124  
*chaque* and *chacun*, 161, 168  
*charger (de)*, 258  
*Charles*, from *Carolus*, 139  
*charme*, gender of, 121  
*chaud*, 233  
*chauve-souris*, plural of, 92  
*chauz*, gender of, 111  
*chef*, *e* in, 27  
*chef-d'œuvre*, *f* silent in, 63  
 „ plural of, 92  
*cher*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
 „ fem. of, 87

*chercher* (à), 259  
*cherrai*, see *choir*  
*chèvre*, masc. form of, 95  
*chevette*, masc. of, 95  
*chevreuil*, fam. of, 95  
*chez*, 236  
*chien*, -en in, 37  
*chiffre*, gender of, 124  
*choir*, 210  
 " takes *être* in compound tenses, 217  
*chose*, o, how pronounced in, 32  
 " gender of, 99  
*chou*, plural of, 88  
*chou-fleur*, plural of, 92  
*chu*, see *choir*  
*chut*, pronunciation of, 57  
*-ci*, with demonstrative pronoun, 154  
*cidre*, gender of, 124  
*ciel*, plural of, 88, 140  
*cierge*, gender of, 117  
*cigare*, gender of, 124  
*cimetière*, gender of, 124  
*cing*, q in, when pronounced, 69, 79  
*cinquième*, 133  
*Circumflex accent*, 11  
*cirque*, gender of, 127  
*clef*, f silent in, 63  
 " gender of, 104  
*clerc*, c silent in, 71  
*clin d'œil*, plural of, 92  
*clotire*, gender of, 124  
*clore*, 210  
 Closed and open syllables, 8  
*codicille*, gender of, 120  
*coffre*, gender of, 124  
*coi*, fem. of, 87  
 Collective numbers, 134  
 Collective substantive, 84  
*collège*, é in, 27  
 " gender of, 117  
*combien*, 231  
 " position of, 288  
*comme*, 231, 241  
*comme si*, 241  
*commencer* (à) (de), 260  
*comment*, 231  
*comment*, position of, 288

*commerce*, gender of, 113  
*commodément*, from *com-mode*, 233  
 Common substantives, 84  
*communément*, from *commun*, 233  
*compagne*, *compagnon*, 95  
 Comparative subordinate conjunctions, 241, 266  
 Comparison of adjectives, 131  
 Comparison of adverbs, 234  
*complaire* (se) (à), 259  
*complet*, fem. of, 87  
 Composite subject, 252  
 Compound substantives, plural of, 92  
 Compound sentence, 243  
*compte*, pronunciation of, 61  
 " gender of, 126  
*compter* not followed by a preposition, 257  
*comte*, *comtesse*, 95  
*concerto*, plural of, 91  
 Concessive subordinate conjunctions, 241, 266  
*concetti*, plural noun used as singular, 91, note  
*concevoir*, 225  
*concile*, gender of, 120  
*conçois*, see *concevoir*  
*concombre*, gender of, 124  
 Concrete substantive, 84  
*concret*, fem. of, 87  
*condamner* (se) (à), 259  
 Conditional present, how formed, 213  
 Conditional conjunctions, 241, 266  
 Conditional mood, use of, 262  
 Conditional sentences, 266  
*conduire*, model of conjugation, in -re, 175, 197, 222  
*conformément*, from *con-forme*, 233  
*confusément*, from *confus*, 233  
*congre*, gender of, 141A

Conjugations, observations on, 174  
 Conjugations in French and Latin compared, 212  
 Conjunctions, co-ordinate, 240  
 Conjunctions, subordinate, 241  
 Conjunctions, mood after, 241  
 Conjunctive personal pronouns, 146  
 Conjunctive personal pronouns, position of in respect to verb, 286A  
 Conjunctive personal pronouns, position in respect to each other, 286B  
*conjuré* (de), 258  
*connaître*, model of conjugation in -re, 175  
*connaître*, *paraître*, *paître*, compared, 221  
 Consecutive conjunctions, 241, 266  
*conseiller* (de), 258  
*consentir* (à), 259  
*consister* (à), 259  
 Consonants, how named, 5  
 Consonant sounds, 42  
 Consonant sounds, symbols to represent, 43, 52  
 Consonant sounds, symbols grouped according to sound, 44  
 Consonants, scheme of, 46  
 Consonants, general rules on, 47  
*conspirer* (à), 259  
*constant*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*constamment*, from *constant*, 233  
*construire*, 222  
*consumer* (se) (à), 259  
*conte*, gender of, 126  
*continuer* (à) (de), 260  
 Continuous consonants, 45  
*contraindre* (à) (de), 28

*contraste*, gender of, 126  
*contredire*, 227  
*contre*, 236  
*contrefaçon*, gender of, 106  
*contribuer* (*à*), 259  
*control*, how accented in English, 17  
*convenir*, uses *être* or *avoir*, 217  
*convenir* (*de*), 258  
*convoyer*, 226  
 Co-ordinate sentences, 243  
*coq*, fem. form of, 95  
*corail*, plural of, 88  
*corpuscule*, gender of, 120  
*côte*, circumflex accent in, 11  
*côte à côte*, 233  
*côté*, masc. gender, 102  
*coud* (*il*), see *coudre*  
*coude*, gender of, 114  
*coudre*, 205  
*coup-de-pied*, plural of 92  
*couple*, double gend. of, 99  
*cour*, gender of, 107  
*courage*, gender of, 117  
*courir*, 206, 224  
*courrai*, see *courir*  
*courre*, 224  
*cousant*, *cousis*, see *coudre*  
*couverde*, gender of, 120  
*-cr* in a syllable, 7  
*crabe*, gender of, 141A  
*raindre* (*de*), 258  
*crâne*, gender of, 122  
*cravat*, how accented in English, 17  
*credo*, plural of, 91  
*crème*, *ém* in, 37  
*crêpe*, double gender of, 99  
*crible*, gender of, 120  
*crime*, gender of, 121  
*croc*, *c* silent in, 71  
*crocodile*, 141A  
*croire*, 205  
*croire*, not followed by a preposition, 257  
*croire*, subjunctive after, 264  
*crois* and *crois*, 221

*croître*, 221  
*croître*, takes *être* or *avoir*, 217  
*croix*, gender of, 111  
*cru* and *crû*, 221  
*cruel*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*crus*, see *croire*  
*crusade*, how accented in English, 17  
*cube*, gender of, 112  
*cueille*, absence of *s* in, 215  
*cueillir*, 206  
*cuiller*, pronunciation of, 65  
*cuiller*, gender of, 107  
*cuire*, 222  
*cuisson*, gender of, 106  
*culte*, gender of, 126  
*cygne*, gender of, 141A  
*cyindre*, gender of, 124

## D

*d* compared with *t*, 45  
*d*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 58  
*d'abord que*, 241  
*d'accord*, 233  
*daigner*, not followed by a preposition, 257  
*daim*, fem. of, 95  
*daine*, masc. of, 95  
*dans*, 236  
*Dates*, *mil* in, 132  
 Dative of personal pronouns, order in sentence, 286  
*d'autant que*, 241  
*d'avantage*, 231, 233  
 Days of the week, gender of, 98, 145  
*de*, masc. nouns ending in, 114  
*débet*, plural of, 91  
*débiteur* from *debitorem*, 136  
*de bonne heure*, 228  
*deçà et delà*, 229

*décamper*, takes *être* or *avoir*, 217  
*décider*, takes *être*, 217  
*déchoir*, 210  
*déchoir*, takes *être* or *avoir*, 217  
*de côté*, 233  
*de crainte que*, 241  
*de crainte que*, subjunctive after, 266  
*dédaigner* (*de*), 258  
*dédale*, gender of, 120  
*dedans*, 229  
*de dessus*, 236  
*déduire*, 222  
*déesse*, masc. of, 95  
*défenderesse*, 95  
*défendeur*, 95  
*défendre* (*de*), 268  
 Definite articles, 86  
*déficit*, plural of, 91  
*dégénérer*, takes *être* or *avoir*, 217  
 Degrees of comparison, 85, 234  
*dehors*, 229  
*déjà*, 228  
*delà*, 229  
*de l'*, used instead of *du*, *de la*, 86  
*délire*, gender of, 124  
*demain*, 228  
*demain*, position of, 288  
*demande* (*à*) (*de*), 260  
*demanderesse*, 95  
*demandeur*, 95  
*de manière que*, 241  
*de manière que*, subjunctive after, 266  
*de meilleure heure*, 228  
*demi*, agreement of, 254  
*de même que*, 241  
*demeurer*, with *être* or *avoir*, 217  
 Demonstrative pronouns 152  
*dent*, gender of, 109  
 Dentals, 45  
*dépendant*, frequent agreement of, 249, note  
*de peur que*, 241  
*de peur que*, subjunctive after, 266

*depuis*, 228, 236  
*depuis que*, 241  
*dernier*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*dernièrement*, 228  
*derrière*, 229, 236  
*des*, s final in, 47, note  
*dès*, 236  
*désastre*, gender of, 124  
*déscendant*, frequent agreement of, 249, note  
*descendre*, takes *être* or *avoir*, 217  
*désespérer* (*de*), 258  
*désirer* (*de*), 258  
*dès lors*, 228  
*dès que*, 241  
*désordre*, gender of, 124  
*désormais*, 228  
*de sorte que*, subjunctive after, 241, 267  
*dessous*, 229  
*dessus*, 229  
 Determinative adjectives, 85  
*déterminer* (*à*), 259  
*détruire*, 222  
*de unde*, 157  
*deux fois*, 280  
*deuxième* and *second*, 133  
*deuxièmement*, 230  
*devant*, 229, 236  
*devoir*, model verb of conjugation in *oir*, 193  
 „ rendered by *ought*, *should*, etc., 176  
*dévoier*, 226  
*dialogue*, gender of, 127  
*d'ici*, 229  
*dieu*, fem. of, 95  
*différent*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*différer* (*de*), 258  
*dilemme*, em in, how pronounced, 37  
*dilettanti*, plural noun used as singular, 91  
*dindon*, fem. of, 95  
*diocèse*, gender of, 125  
*diorama*, plural of, 91  
 Diphthongs, 18

*dire*, 227  
*dire* (*de*), 258  
 Direct object, what is meant by, 249  
*disant*, see *dire*  
*discret*, fem. of, 87  
 Disjunctive personal pronouns, 146, 149  
*disparaître*, takes *être* or *avoir*, 217  
*dispenser* (*de*), 258  
*disposer* (*se*) (*à*), 259  
*dissoudre*, like *résoudre*, 205, note  
*dissous*, *dissoute*, 87  
*dites*, see *dire*  
*divers*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
 Division of words into syllables, 7  
*divorce*, gender of, 113  
*divortium*, 253  
*dix*, pronunciation of x in, 73, 79  
*doigt*, pronunciation of, 53  
*dois*, see *devoir*  
*domaine*, gender of, 122  
*domicile*, gender of, 120  
*dompter*, pronunciation of, 61  
*donner* (*à*), 259  
*donnes-en*, used instead of *donne-en*, 50  
*dont*, from *de* and *unde*, 157, note  
 „ never interrogative, 159, note  
*dorénavant*, 228  
*dormir*, see *sentir*  
*dot*, pronunciation of, 57  
 „ gender of, 109  
*d'ou*, 229  
 Double gender, substantives with, 99, 148  
*doute*, gender of, 126  
*doux*, fem. of, 87  
*dr* in a syllable, 7  
*drachme*, pronunciation of, 55  
*drame*, gender of, 121  
*druide*, *druidesse*, 95  
*dû*, see *devoir*

*duc*, c in, 47  
 „ fem. of, 95  
*duchesse*, masc. of, 95  
*duire*, 222  
*duo*, plural of, 91  
*duplicata*, plural of, 91  
*durant*, 236  
*dus*, see *devoir*

## E

*e*, sounded as in model word *je*, 20, 21  
*e*, sounded as in model word *thé*, 20  
*e* mute, how far glided over, 114  
*e* mute in *faites-le*, etc., 25  
*e* mute, in *le oui*, *le onse*, *le un*, 25  
*e* mute, rarely preserved before other vowels, 49  
*e* mute, rule of, in Gender, 96  
*e* mute, masc. nouns ending in, 112—130  
*-é*, feminine nouns ending in, 102  
*è*, value of symbol, 29  
*-ée*, masc. nouns ending in, 115  
*e* after *g* in *mangeant*, etc., 202  
*eau*, gender of, 110  
*écarteler*, 219  
*ecce-homo*, plural of, 91  
 Ecclesiastical foreign words, plural of, 91  
*échange*, gender of, 117  
*échapper*, takes *être* or *avoir*, 217  
*échecs*, c silent in, 71  
*écho*, o in, 32  
*échoir*, 210  
*échouer*, takes *être* or *avoir*, 217  
*échu*, see *échoir*  
*éclore*, 210, 217  
*economy* and *économie*, accent in, compared, 14, 6

- écrire*, 205  
*écrivain*, gender of, 124  
*édifice*, gender of, 113  
*éducation* and *education*,  
 "accent in, compared,  
 14, 6  
*efforcer* (s') (à) (de), 260  
*également*, 231  
*-éga*, gender of nouns in,  
 117  
*ei*, in closed tonic syllable,  
 28  
*ei*, value of symbol in  
 pronunciation, 28  
*-eil* masc. adjectival end-  
 ing, 87  
*ein*, value of symbol in  
 pronunciation, 38  
*-eindre*, verbs in, 223  
*éléphant*, gender of, 141A  
*-eler*, *-ier*, verbs in, 203,  
 219  
*élève*, 95  
 Elision of *a*, *i*, *e* mute, 49  
*elle*, conjunctive personal  
 pronoun, 146  
 " disjunctive personal  
 pronoun, 148  
*éloge*, gender of, 117  
*-ème*, *-eme*, 121  
*émail*, plural of, 88  
*embargo*, plural of, 91  
*embellir*, takes *être* or  
*avoir*, 217  
*empêcher* (s') (de), 258  
*empereur*, fem. of, 95  
*empire*, gender of, 124  
*empirer*, takes *être* or  
*avoir*, 217  
*emplâtre*, gender of, 124  
*employé*, fem. use of, 141  
*employer* (à), 259  
*empresser* (s') (à) (de), 260  
*en*, *em*, how pronounced,  
 37  
*-en*, silent in 3rd person  
 plural of verbs, 37  
*en*, pronoun, used as a  
 genitive, 147  
 " adverb, 229  
 " preposition, 236  
*en arrière*, 229  
*en attendant que*, 241  
*en attendant que*, subjunc-  
 tive after, 266  
*en bas*, 229  
*en cas que*, 241  
 " " subjunctive af-  
 ter, 266  
*enchanteur*, *enchanteresse*,  
 136  
*encore*, 228, 233  
*encore que*, 241  
 " " subjunctive af-  
 ter, 266  
*encourager* (à), 259  
*en deça de*, 237  
*en dedans*, 229  
*en dehors*, 229  
*en dépôt de*, 237  
*en dessous*, 229  
*en dessus*, 229  
*en face*, 229, 233  
*en faveur de*, 237, 238  
*enfer*, pronunciation of, 65  
*enfin*, 228  
*engager* (à), 259  
 English of French tenses,  
 182  
*en haut*, 229  
*en même temps*, 228  
*énormément*, from *énorme*,  
 233  
*en présence de*, 237  
*en retard*, 233  
*enseigne*, double gender  
 of, 141  
*enseigner* (à), 259  
*ensuite*, 228, 233  
*entendre*, not followed by  
 a preposition, 257  
*entre*, 236  
*entrer* takes *être* in com-  
 pound tenses, 217  
*entreprendre* (de), 258  
 Enumerations, absence of  
 article in, 281, 2  
*en vain*, 233  
*en vérité*, 233  
*enverras*, see *envoyer*  
*envers*, 236  
*environ*, 231, 233, 236  
*envoyer*, 206, 226  
*épais*, fem. of, 87  
*éphod*, pronunciation of,  
 58  
*épine*, gender of, 98  
*équilibre*, gender of, 124  
*-er final*, *r* usually silent  
 in, 65  
*-er*, conjugation in, cor-  
 responds to Latin in  
*-are*, 212  
*-er*, conjugation in, 190  
*-er*, number of verbs in,  
 175  
*-er*, masc. adjectival end-  
 ing, 87  
*errata*, plural of, 91  
*es* (*tu*), influence of *s* on  
 pronunciation, 47, note  
*esclandre*, gender of, 124  
*espace*, double gender of,  
 99  
*espérer*, mood after, 264  
*essayer* (à) (de), 260  
*est* (east), pronunciation  
 of, 57  
*est-ce que*, when used, 286,  
 note  
*esteem* and *estime*, accent  
 in compared, 14  
*estime*, gender of, 121  
*estomac*, *c* silent in, 71  
*et*, 239  
*-et*, masc. adjectival end-  
 ing, 87  
*étais*, see *être*  
*étalon*, fem. form of, 95  
*état-major*, plural of, 92  
*êteindre*, 223  
*êtes*, see *être*  
*étions*, *ti* in, 57, note  
*étonner* (s') (de), 258  
*étudier* (s') (à), 259  
*être à*, form for the im-  
 perfect tenses, 177  
 " conjugation of, 189,  
 209  
 " use of, with intransi-  
 tive verbs, 183, 217  
 " used with reflexive  
 verbs, 184, 218  
 " gender of, 98  
*eu*, as in keyword *jeu*, 26  
*-eu*, singular substantival  
 ending, 88  
*eu*, see *avoir*  
*-eur*, adjectives in, 87, 136

-eur, nouns in, 107  
*eusse*, see *avoir*  
*trangile*, gender of, 120  
*evidemment*, from *evident*, 233  
*éviter* (*de*), 258  
*excepté*, 236, 238  
 " agreement of, 254  
*excuser* (*s'*) (*de*), 258  
*exéat*, plural of, 91  
*exécuteur*, 136  
*exhorter* (*à*), 259  
*exempt*, *exemption*, pronunciation of, 61  
*existant*, frequent agreement of, 249, note  
*expirer*, 217  
*exposer* (*s'*) (*à*), 259  
*expres*, adverb, 231, 233  
*expres*, fem. of, 87  
*expressément*, from *expres*, 233  
*extérieur*, fem. of, 87  
*ex-voto*, plural of, 91

## F

*f*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 63  
*f* and *v*, sounds of, compared, 45  
*-f*, masc. adjectives ending in, 87  
*-f*, fem. nouns ending in, 104  
*façon*, gender of, 106  
*fac-simile*, plural of, 91  
*factotum*, plural of, 91  
*faible*, see *falloir*  
*faim*, gender of, 105  
*faire*, 209  
 " not followed by a preposition, 257  
*faisant*, see *faire*  
*fatte*, gender of, 126  
*faites*, see *faire*  
*falloir*, 208  
 " rendered by *must*, *shall*, 176  
 " not followed by a preposition, 257

*faon*, pronunciation of, 39  
*fasse*, see *faire*  
*faste*, gender of, 126  
*fat*, pronunciation of, 57  
*fatal*, plural of, 140  
*fatigue*, English, and *fatigue*, French, compared, 14, 17  
*so fatiguer* (*à*), 259  
*faudra*, see *falloir*  
*faut*, see *falloir*  
*faute de*, 237  
*faux*, adjective, fem. of, 87  
 " change of meaning according to position, 287  
*faux*, adverb, 233  
*faux*, substantive, double gender of, 99  
*favori*, fem. of, 87  
*-fe*, masc. nouns ending in, 116  
*feindre* (*de*), 258  
*féliciter* (*de*), 258  
*femme*, masculine form of, 95  
 Feminine of adjectives, how formed, 87  
 Feminine suffixes in nouns, 95  
*ferai*, see *faire*,  
*festival*, plural of, 140  
*few*, adjective, plural of, 88, note  
 " agreement of, 254  
*feutre*, gender of, 124  
*fiacre*, gender of, 124  
*fier*, sound of *r* in, 65  
 " change of meaning, according to position, 287  
*fifre*, gender of, 124  
*filial*, plural of, 140  
*filie*, masc. of, 95  
*file*, pronunciation of, 59, 67  
 " fem. of, 95  
 " from *filius*, 139  
*filtre*, gender of, 124  
*fin*, double gender of, 99  
*final*, plural of, 140

Final subordinate conjunctions, 241, 266  
*finale*, plural of, 91  
*finir*, model of conjugation in *-ir*, 175  
*fis*, see *faire*  
*flamme*, *am* in, 37  
*flatter* (*se*) (*de*), 258  
*flour*, gender of, 107  
*fleurir*, see *finir*, 191  
*fleuve*, gender of, 128  
*florissant*, see *fleurir*  
*fluide*, gender of, 98  
*foi*, gender of, 103  
*foie*, gender of, 119  
*fois*, gender of, 108  
*folio*, plural of, 91  
*fond*, *fonds*, compared, 139  
*font* (*ils*), see *faire*  
*forcer* (*à*) (*de*), 260  
 Force accent, where laid in English, 15, 3  
 Force accent, where laid in French, 15, 4  
 Force accent, weak in French, 15, 6  
 Force accent in a phrase, 15  
*forceps*, *s* in, 59, note  
 " *p* in, 61, note  
 Foreign words, plural of, 91  
*forêt*, gender of, 109  
 Formation of plural in adjectives and substantives, 88  
 Formation of tenses, rules for, 180; examples of, 181  
*fors*, 236  
*fort*, 231  
*forum*, plural of, 91  
*fossile*, gender of, 98  
*fou*, length of *ou* in, 41  
*fou*, *fol*, fem. of, 87  
*fouet*, length of *ou* in, 41  
*foulard*, length of *ou* in, 41  
*foule*, length of *ou* in, 41  
*fourni*, gender of, 141A  
*fr-* in a syllable, 7  
 Fractional numbers, 135

*frais*, adjective, fem. of, 87  
*franc*, fem. of, 87  
*franc-maçon*, plural of, 92  
*frémir (de)*, 258  
 French and Latin conjugations compared, 212  
*frêne*, gender of, 97, 98  
*frère*, fem. form of, 95  
*fret*, pronunciation of, 57  
*fromage*, gender of, 117  
*frugal*, plural of, 140  
*fuir*, 205  
*fus*, see *être*  
*fusil*, *l* silent in, 67, 6  
*fusionem*, 246  
 Future simple indicative, how formed, 178, 213  
 Future subjunctive, lack of special forms for, 188-199, 279  
 Future simple, use of, 276  
 Future imperfect, use of, 277  
 Future perfect, use of, 278

## G

*g*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 53, 54  
*g* and *k*, sounds of, compared, 45  
*gagreur*, *eu* in, how pronounced, 26  
*gaiement* or *gaïment*, from *gai*, 233  
*galant*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*galimatias*, *ti* in, how pronounced, 57 note  
*garçon*, fem. form of, 95  
*garder (se) (de)*, 258  
*garde*, double gender of, 141  
*garnison*, gender of, 106  
*gazette*, accent in English, 7

*-ge*, masc. nouns ending in, 117  
*geler*, 219  
*gémir (de)*, 258  
 GENDER, meaning of word, 93  
 GENDER, what parts of speech have, 84, 85  
 GENDER in articles, 86  
 GENDER in adjectives, 86, 136, 138  
 GENDER in substantives, 93-130. See also TABLE OF CONTENTS  
*gendre*, fem. form of, 95  
*général* and *recevoir* compared, 13  
 Generic names of human beings, gender of, 141  
 Generic names of animals, gender of, 141A  
*génie*, gender of, 119  
*genou*, plural of, 88  
*genre*, gender of, 124  
*gens*, double gender of, 99  
*gentil*, *l* silent in, 67, 6  
 „ fem. of, 87  
 „ change of meaning according to position, 287  
*gentilhomme*, plural of, 92  
*gentiment*, from *gentil*, 233  
 Gerund, or Verbal Substantive, to be distinguished from the verbal adjective, 214, 255  
*gésir*, defective verb, 210  
*geste*, gender of, 126  
*girofle*, gender of, 120  
*gisons*, etc., see *gérir*  
*gîte*, gender of, 126  
*givre*, double gender of, 99  
*glacial*, plural of, 140  
*glaive*, gender of, 128  
*globe*, gender of, 112  
*gloire*, gender of, 124, note  
*glorieux*, fem. of, 87  
*glorifier (se) (de)*, 258  
*glu*, gender of, 110

*gn*, in a syllable, 7  
*golfe*, gender of, 116  
*gonffre*, gender of, 124  
*goutte*, affirmative power of, 235  
*gouvernante*, masc. of, 95  
*gouverneur*, fem. of, 95  
*grade*, gender of, 114  
*grand*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
 „ compared, 131  
*grand'mère*, 138  
*grandir* takes *être* or *avoir*, 217  
*granule*, gender of, 120  
 Graphic accents, 10, 16  
 Grave accent, 12  
*greco*, fem. of, 87  
*grog*, pronunciation of, 54  
*gros*, fem. of, 87  
 „ pronunciation of, 32  
 „ usually precedes the substantive, 287  
*groupe*, gender of, 123  
*gue*, *u* silent in syllable, 36  
*guenon*, masc. form of, 95  
*guêpe*, gender of, 141A  
*guérir*, *u* silent in, 36  
*guérison*, gender of, 106  
*guoux*, from *coquus*, 139  
*gui*, *u* silent in syllable, 36  
 Gutturals, pronunciation of, 45

## H

*h*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 78  
*h muto*, 78  
*h aspirate*, 78  
*habitué (s') (à)*, 259  
*hache*, *h* in, 78  
*hagard*, *h* in, 78  
*haie*, *h* in, 78  
*haillon*, *h* in, 78

*haine*, *h* in, 78  
*hair*, see *finir*, 191  
*haïr*, see *haïr*  
*hallo*, *h* in, 78  
*halte*, *h* in, 78  
*hanap*, *p* sounded in, 61, note  
*harangue*, *h* in, 78  
*harasser*, *h* in, 78  
*harceler*, 219  
*hardi*, *h* in, 78  
*harnacher*, *h* in, 78  
*harpe*, *h* in, 78  
*hasard*, *h* in, 78  
*hasarder (se) (à) (de)*, 260  
*hass*, masc. form of, 95  
*hâte*, *h* in, 78  
*hâter (se) (de)*, 258  
*haut*, *h* in, 78  
*-he*, masc. nouns ending in, 118  
*hélas*, pronunciation of, 59  
*hennir*, *h* in, 78  
*héraut*, *h* in, 78  
*hérissier*, *h* in, 78  
*héroïne*, masc. of, 95  
*héros*, fem. of, 95  
*"*, *h* in, 78  
*hésiter (à)*, 259  
*hêtre*, *h* in, 78  
*heurter*, *h* in, 78  
*Hiatus* in prose, 48  
*"* how avoided in the articles, 86  
*"* how avoided in the pronouns, 149, 152, 164  
*"* how avoided in the verbs, 201, 216  
*hibou*, plural of, 88  
*hideux*, *h* in, 78  
*hier*, 65, 228  
*"* position of, 288  
*hippopotame*, gender of, 141A  
*hisser*, *h* in, 78  
*histoire*, gender of, 124, note  
*hiver*, pronunciation of, 65  
*homard*, *h* in, 78  
*homicide*, gender of, 114

*homme*, fem. form of, 95  
*"* and *on* compared, 139  
*honnête*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*honneur*, gender of, 107  
*honte*, *h* in, 78  
*hôpital*, pronunciation of *ô* in, 33  
*hormis*, 236, 238  
*hors*, 236  
*hors de*, 237  
*hospice*, gender of, 113,  
*hôte*, fem. of, 95  
*hôtesse*, masc. of, 95  
*houblon*, *h* in, 78  
*houille*, *h* in, 78  
*houle*, *h* in, 78  
*houppes*, *h* in, 78  
*houx*, *h* in, 78  
*huit*, *h* in, 78  
*"*, pronunciation of, 57, 79  
*hurler*, *h* in, 78  
*hutte*, *h* in, 78

I

*i, î*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 30  
*ï* cut off in "*s'ïl*" only, 49  
*-i*, fem. nouns ending in, 103  
*ici*, 229  
*ici près*, 229  
*idiome*, gender of, 121  
*-ie*, masc. nouns ending in, 119  
*-ième*, ending of Ordinal numbers, 133  
*-ien*, how pron., 37  
*-ien*, masc. adj. ending, 87  
*il, l* how pronounced in syllable, 67  
*il*, pers. pron., 146  
*ill, ll* how pronounced in, 67  
*image*, from *imaginem*  
*"* gender of, 117

*imaginer*, *im* in, how pronounced, 36  
*imaginer (s')*, subjunctive after, 264  
*"* not followed by a preposition, 257  
*imbroglio*, plural of, 91  
*immensément*, from *immense*, 233  
*impératrice*, masc. of, 95  
*Imperative*, 178, 182  
*"* use of, 269  
*Imperfect Present*, 177, 271  
*Imperfect Past*, 177, 274  
*Imperfect Future*, 177, 277  
*Impersonal Subject*, 253  
*Impersonal Verbs*, how conjugated, 185  
*importunément*, from *importun*, 233  
*impromptu*, plural of, 91  
*in, im*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 38  
*incendie*, gender of, 119  
*Indefinite Article*, 86  
*Indefinite Pronouns*, 160  
*Indicative Mood*, use of, in Principal sentences, 261  
*Indicative Mood*, use of, in Subordinate sentences, 261  
*inevitable* and *inévitabile* accent in, compared, 14, 4  
*inférieur*, fem. of, 87  
*Infinitives* gender, of, 98  
*Infinitive Mood*, 255  
*Initial letters*, 47, note  
*inné, in* in, 38  
*in-octavo*, plural of, 91  
*inquiet*, fem. of, 87  
*inscote*, gender of, 126  
*inspecteur*, from *inspectorem*, 136  
*instruire*, 222  
*Interjections*, 242  
*interligne*, double gender of, 99  
*Interrogative Pronouns*, 155



Intransitive Verbs, 183  
 Intransitive Verbs usually take *avoir* in compound tenses, 183, 217  
 Intransitive Verbs which always take *être*, 183, 217  
 Intransitive Verbs with *être*, model of, 199  
 Intransitive Verbs which take *avoir* or *être*, 217  
 Intransitive Verbs with *être*, agreement of Past Participle in, 183  
*introduire*, 222  
*inventeur*, from *inventorem*, 136  
*inviter* (*à*), 259  
*-ion*, gender of nouns in, 106  
*-ionem*, fem. Latin ending, 106  
*-ir*, second conjugation, enlarged form, 191  
 „ second conjugation, simple form, 192  
 „ number of verbs in, 175  
 „ conjugation in, corresponds to Latin in *-ire*, 212  
*irai*, from Latin verb *ire*, see *aller*  
 Irregularities in the formation of plural arising from the vocalisation of *l*, 140  
 Irregularities and variations in verbs, 200-210  
 Irregular gender, nouns of, 97  
*-isme*, masc. ending, 121

## J

*j*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 56  
*j* in *jeter*, *ch* in *chemin*, sounds of, compared, 45  
*jadis*, 228

*jadis*, pronunc. of, 59  
*jamais*, 228  
 „ affirmative power of, 235  
*jars*, fem. form of, 95  
*je, tu, il*, etc., 146  
*jeu, je*, sounds of *eu* and *e* in, compared, 26  
*jeune*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*jeûne*, gender of, 122  
*joindre*, 223  
*jong*, pronunciation of, 54  
*jour*, *r* in, 47  
*julep*, *p* sounded in, 61  
*jurer* (*de*), 258  
*jusqu'à ce que*, 241  
 „ „ subjunctive after, 266  
*jusqu'où*, 229

## K

*k*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 52  
*k* and *g*, sounds of, compared, 45  
*kermès*, *s* in, 59, note  
 Key-words to pronunciation of vowels, 21, 41  
 Key-words to pronunciation of consonants, 44, 45

## L

*l*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 66  
*l* mouillé, 67  
 „ variation in pronunciation of, 81  
*l* used instead of *le, la*, 86  
*l* of Latin words changed into *u* in French, 140  
*la*, see Articles  
*la*, see Pers. Pronouns  
*la* and *là*, 12  
*là*, 229

*là*, with demonstrative pronouns, 154  
*là-bas*, 229  
 Labials, sounds of, 45  
*labial*, plural of, 140  
*labyrinthe*, gen. of, 126  
*lacs*, from *lacus*, 139  
 „ *c* silent in, 71  
*là-dedans*, 229  
*laie*, masc. form of, 95  
*lampion*, gender of, 106  
*landwehr*, plural of, 91  
*laps*, *p* in, 61, note  
*las*, pronunciation of, 59  
 Latin, modern pronunciation of, in France, 82  
 „ and French conjugations compared, 212  
*laver* (*se*), model of reflexive verb, 198  
*lazzi*, plural of, 91  
*le*, article, 86  
*le*, indeclinable  
*le*, pronoun, 146  
*-le*, masc. nouns ending in, 120  
*-le*, diminutives in, 120  
*leçon*, gender of, 106  
*legatee*, accent in English, 17  
*légion*, gender of, 106  
*legs*, pronunciation of, 53  
*légume*, gender of, 121  
*le long de*, 237, 238  
*le mien*, adjective possessive pronoun, 150  
*le nôtre*, adjectival possessive pronoun, 151  
*lent, lentement*, 233, note  
*lequel*, interrogative pronoun, 159  
*les*, influence of *s* on pronunciation of *e*, 47, note  
*le sien*, substantive possessive pronoun, 151  
*lest*, pronunciation of, 57  
*le tien*, adject. possessive pronoun, 151  
 Letters, names of, 5  
 „ sounds of, see *Vowels and Consonants*

*leur*, adjective possessive pronoun, 150  
 „ no special feminine form, 150, 165  
*le vôtre*, 151  
*lierre*, gender of, 124  
*fièvre*, fem. form of, 95  
*lieutenant-colonel*, plural of, 92  
*linge*, gender of, 117  
*lion*, fem. form of, 95  
*lire*, 205  
*lis*, from *lilius*, 209  
 „ pronunciation of, 59  
*lisant*, see *lire*  
*livre*, double gender of, 99  
*loge*, gender of, 117  
*loi*, gender of, 103  
*loin de*, 237  
*l'on*, 162, 172  
*long*, fem. of, 87  
 „ position of, 287  
*longtemps*, 228  
*lors*, 228, 233  
*lorsque*, origin of, 241  
*loup*, fem. of, 95  
*Louis*, from *Ludovicus*, 139  
*louce*, masc. of, 95  
*louoyer*, 226  
*lu*, see *lire*  
*lui*, pronoun, 148  
 „ = *soi*, 506  
 „ from *luire*, 222  
*luire*, 380  
*l'un et l'autre*, 162  
*l'un ou l'autre*, 162  
*luxe*, gender of, 129  
*lycée*, gender of, 115

## M

*m*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 37, 68  
*m*, fem. nouns ending in, 105  
*macaroni*, plural noun used as singular, 91  
*mâchoire*, gender of, 124  
*madame*, plural of, 92

*mademoiselle*, plural of, 92  
*magnificat*, plural of, 91  
*maigre*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*main*, gender of, 106  
*maintenant*, 228  
*mairie*, fem. of, 95  
*mais*, 239  
*mais*, pronunc. of, 59  
*maison*, gender of, 106  
*maître*, circumflex accent in, 10  
*maître*, fem. of, 95  
*maîtresse*, masc. of, 95  
*majeur*, fem. of, 87  
*mal* (adverb), 231  
 „ comparison of, 234  
*malaise*, gender of, 125  
*malgré*, 236  
*malheureux*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*malhonnête*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*malt*, pronunc. of, 57  
*manche*, double gender of, 99  
*mangeant*, *e* in, 202  
*manque*, gender of, 127  
*manquer* (*de*), 258  
*maquereau*, 141A  
*marc*, *c* silent in, 71  
*marine*, how accented in English, 17  
*marraine*, masc. form of, 95  
*mars*, pronunciation of, 59  
*marteler*, 219  
 Masculine nouns ending in *e* mute, 112-130  
*masque*, gender of, 127  
*masacre*, gender of, 124  
*matinal*, plural of, 140  
*maudire*, 209, 227  
*maudissant*, see *maudire*  
*mauvais*, compar. of, 131  
 „ usually precedes the noun, 287  
*maximum*, plural of, 91

*may* and *might*, rarely signs of subjunctive, 176, 182  
*may*, rendered by *pouvoir*, 176  
 Meaning, clue to gender, 97  
*-me*, masc. nouns ending in, 121  
*me*, pronoun, 146  
*méchant*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*médial*, plural of, 140  
*mélange*, gender of, 117  
*même*, 231  
 „ indefinite adjective pronoun, 161  
*memento*, plural of, 91  
*mémoire*, double gender of, 99  
*menacer* (*de*), 258  
*mensonge*, gender of, 117  
*mentir*, see *sentir*  
*mer*, gender of, 107  
 „ pronunciation of, 65  
*merci*, double gender of, 99  
*mère*, masc. form of, 95  
*mérinos*, pronunciation of, 59  
*mérite*, gender of, 126  
*mériter* (*de*), 258  
*merle*, gender of, 141A  
*mes*, influence of *s* on pronunciation of *e*, 47, note  
*messire*, *mes* in, 139, note  
*Metals*, gender of names of, 98, 3  
*météore*, gender of, 124  
*mettre*, 205, 218  
*mouble*, gender of, 98  
*mours*, see *mourir*  
*mourte*, gender of, 124  
*mours*, see *mouvoir*  
*microscope*, gen. of, 123  
*mie*, affirmative power of, 235  
*mien*, *tien*, *sien*, 151  
*might*, rendered by *pouvoir*, 176

*mil*, when used for *mille*, 132  
*mille*, a thousand, 132  
*million*, gender of, 106  
 „ plural of, 132  
*Minerals*, gender of, 98, 3  
*mineur*, fem. of, 87  
 „ and *moindre*  
 compared, 139  
*minimum*, plural of, 91  
*ministère*, gender of, 124  
*miracle*, gender of, 120  
*mis*, see *mettre*  
 „ observations on, 218  
*miséréré*, plural of, 91  
*modeler*, 219  
*mœurs*, pronunciation of, 59  
*moi*, personal pronoun, 148  
*moi-même*, definitive pronoun, 148  
*moindre*, 181  
*moindre* and *mineur*  
 compared, 139  
*moine*, fem. form of, 95  
*moins*, 231, 234  
*moisson*, gender of, 106  
*mol*, used for *mou*, 50  
*Momentary* consonant sounds, 45  
*mon*, adjective possessive pronoun, 150, 164  
*monde*, gender of, 114  
*monseigneur*, plur. of, 92  
*monsieur*, *r* in, 65  
 „ plural of, 92  
*monstre*, gender of, 124  
*Montha*, gender of, 98, 5  
*monticule*, gender of, 120  
*montrer* (*à*), 259  
*Moods*, 173, 255  
*mort*, gender of, 109  
 „ see *mourir*,  
*mortel*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*morue*, gender of, 141A  
*mou*, *mol*, fem. of, 87  
*Mouillé* consonants, 80  
*mouillant*, see *moudre*  
*moule*, double gender of, 99

*moult*, 233  
*moulu*, see *moudre*  
*mountaineer*, accent in English, 17  
*Mountains*, gender of names of, 148  
*mourir*, 208  
 „ takes *être* in compound tenses, 183, 217  
*mourrai*, see *mourir*  
*mouvoir*, 208  
*moyennant*, 236, 238  
*muet*, fem. of, 87  
*mus*, see *mouvoir*  
*musée*, gender of, 115  
*must*, rendered by  *falloir*, 177  
*Mutes*, 45  
*mystère*, gender of, 124  
*mythe*, gender of, 118

## N

*n*, how pronounced, 68  
*-n*, fem. nouns ending in, 106  
*naguère*, 228  
*naissant*, see *naître*  
*naître*, 205, 221  
 „ takes *être* in compound tenses, 183, 217  
*naquis*, see *naître*  
*narcisse*, gender of, 125  
*Nasal* vowels, 20, 37  
 „ „ misleading term, 20, note  
*Nasal* vowels and nasal consonants, 45  
*naval*, plural of, 140  
*navire*, gender of, 124  
*-ne*, masc. nouns ending in, 122  
*ne*, 232, 288  
*ne*, addition of, in subordinate sentence, 267  
*ne . . . guère*, 231  
*ne . . . jamais*, 228, 282  
*ne . . . pas*, 232  
*ne . . . plus*, 232

*ne . . . point*, 232  
*ne . . . que*, 231  
*ne . . . rien*, 232  
*nef*, gender of, 104  
*Negation*, 235  
*nerf*, *nerfs*, pronunciation of, 63  
*net*, pronunciation of, 57  
*neuf*, *f* in, when sounded, 79  
 „ in *neuf ans*, 63  
 „ fem. of, 87  
*Neuter* gender, 93  
*neuvième*, 133  
*neveu*, fem. form of, 95  
*nez*, pronunciation of, 60  
*né*, see *naître*  
*néanmoins*, 239  
*négoce*, gender of, 115  
*négre*, fem. of, 95  
*négresse*, masc. of, 95  
*ni*, sentences connected by, 252  
*ni . . . ni*, 239  
*nier* (*de*), 258  
*nièce*, masc. form of, 95  
*ni l'un, ni l'autre*, 162  
*nocere*, 222  
*Noël*, gender of, 145  
*nué*, pronunciation of, 32  
*noir*, gender of, 111  
*nombre*, gender of, 124  
*non*, 232  
*nonobstant*, 236, 238  
 „ *que*, 241  
*non-seulement*, 239  
*notre*, possessive pronoun, 150  
*Nouns* masculine ending in *e mute*, 97  
*Nouns* feminine not ending in *e mute*, 97, 100  
*nouveau*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*nouveau*, *nouvel*, fem. of, 87  
*nouvel*, etc., used to avoid hiatus, 50, 87, note  
*nu*, agreement of, 254  
*nuire*, 222

*nui* and *fait* compared, 218  
*nuit*, gender of, 109  
*nul*, fem. of, 87  
 „ 161  
*nullement*, 232  
*nulle part*, 229  
 Numerals, 132  
 Number in substantives and adjectives, 84

## O

*o* value of symbol in pronunciation, 32  
*ø* value of symbol in pronunciation, 33  
*oasis*, pronunciation of, 59  
 „ gender of, 108  
*obus*, pronunc. of, 59  
 Objective, 84, obs.  
*obscurément*, from *obscur*, 233  
*obstiner* (*s'*) (*à*), 259  
*œ*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 29  
*œ* in *œil*, etc., 29  
*Œdipe*, pronunciation of, 32  
*œil*, pronunciation of, 31, 32  
 „ plurals of, 88, 140  
*Œtina*, pronunciation of, 32  
*œuf*, *œufs*, pronunciation of, 63  
*office*, double gender of, 99  
*offre* (*j'*), absence of *s* in, 215  
*-oge*, nouns in, gender of, 97  
*ogre*, *ogresse*, 95  
*ois*, masc. form of, 95  
*oignon*, pronunc. of, 30  
*-oindre*, verbs in, 223  
*-oir*, conjugation in, not regular, 175  
 „ contains few verbs, 175

*-oir*, conjugation in, corresponds to Latin in *ère*, 212  
*-oire*, masc. nouns in, 124  
*oiseau-mouche*, plural of, 92  
*-ôtre*, verbs in, 221  
*-ome*, *-ôme*, *-aume*, masc. endings, 121  
*on*, *om*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 39  
*on* in *monsieur*, how pronounced, 39  
*on*, indef. pron., 162, 172  
*on* and *homme* compared, 139  
*-onc*, *c* silent in ending, 71  
*oncle*, fem. form of, 95  
*ongle*, gender of, 120  
*ont* (*ils*), see *avoir*  
*once*, vowel not cut off before, 25  
 Open syllables and open sounds, distinction between, 8, note  
*opiniâtrément*, from *opiniâtre*, 233  
*opiniâtrer* (*s'*) (*à*), 259  
*orateur*, fem. use of, 141  
*oratorio*, plural of, 91  
*orchestre*, gender of, 124  
 Order of words in the sentence, 285  
 Ordinal numbers, how formed, 133  
*ordre*, gender of 124  
*ordonner* (*de*), 258  
*organe*, gender of, 122  
*oser*, not followed by a preposition, 257  
*où*, 229, 510  
*ou*, sentences connected by, 212  
*ou* and *où*, 12  
*ou*, *où*, *ou*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 21, 35  
*ou . . . ou*, 239  
*ou* in *fouet*, *fou*, *foule*, *foulard*, length of, 41  
*-ou*, masc. adjectival ending, 87

*-ou*, sing. subst. ending, 88  
*oublier* (*de*), 258  
*ouest*, pronunciation of, 57  
*ought*, rendered by *devoir*, 177  
*oui*, *onze*, *un*, *e* not cut off before, 25  
*oui* (yes), 232  
*out*, 210  
*oui-dire*, plural of, 92  
*ouïr*, defect. verb, 210  
*ours*, pronunciation of, 59  
*outil*, *l* silent in, 67  
*outré*, 236  
*ouvert*, see *ouvrir*  
*ourre* (*j'*), absence of *s* in, 215  
*ouvrir*, 205

## P

*p*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 61  
*p* and *b*, sounds of, compared, 45  
*p* carried on in *trop indulgent*, 61  
*pacte*, gender of, 126  
*page*, gender of, 117  
*pair*, *païresse*, 95  
*paître*, 221  
*paix*, gender of, 111  
*panache*, gender of, 118  
*panorama*, plural of, 91  
*panthère*, gender of, 141A  
*paon*, pronunciation of, 39  
*papillon*, gender of, 141A  
*par* (by), 236  
 Paradigms, observations on, 187  
 „ of verbs, 188-199  
*paradoxe*, gender of, 129  
*paragraphe*, gender of, 116  
*paraître*, not followed by a preposition, 257

- paraphrasis*, gender of, 119  
*paroque*, 241  
*par-deçà*, 236  
*par-delà*, 236  
*par-derrière*, 222, 236  
*par-dessus*, 236  
*par-devant*, 229, 236  
*par hasard*, 231  
*par ici*, 231  
*par là*, 229  
*parler (de)*, 258  
*parmi*, 233, 236  
*par mois*, etc., absence of article in, 282, note  
*paroi*, gender of, 103  
*parrain*, fem. form of, 95  
 Parts of speech, 83  
*part*, gender of, 109  
*parterre*, gender of, 144  
*participant*, frequent agreement of, 249  
*participe*, gender of, 123  
 Participle, 248, note  
 Participle Past stem, 178  
 Participle Past, use of in compound tenses, 178  
 Participle Past, agreement of, in Passive sentence, 249  
 Participle Past, agreement of, in Active sentence, 249  
 Participle Past, with Intransitive verbs having *être*, 183  
 Participle Present, agreement of, 248  
*partir*, 192,  
 " takes *être* in compound tenses, 183, 192, 217  
 Partitive genitive, 86  
 " " no article in, 281  
*partout*, 229  
*paru*, see *paraître*  
*parvenir (à)*, 259  
*pas*, affirmative power of, 235  
*pascal*, plural of, 140  
*passer*, takes *être* or *avoir*, 217  
 Passive Verb, what is meant by, 249  
 Passive Verb, less used in French than in English, 186, note  
 Passive voice, no special tense-forms for, 186  
 Past Participle, see Participle  
 Past Simple tense, 177, 178  
 Past Simple tense, uses of, 273  
 Past Imperfect tense, 177, 178  
 Past Imperfect tense, uses of, 274  
 Past Perfect tense, 177, 178  
 Past Perfect tense, uses of, 275  
 Past tense forms, sequence of, 279  
*pasteur*, *pâtre*, 139  
*pastoral* (French) and *pastoral* (English), accent in, compared, 14, 4  
*pâté*, gender of, 102  
*pâtre* and *pasteur* compared, 139  
*patrimoine*, gender of, 122  
*pauvre*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*pays*, etc., how pron., 31  
*paysan*, fem. of, 95  
*-pe*, masc. ending, 123  
*peau*, gender of, 110  
*pêcheur*, *pêcheresse*, 136  
*pêcheur*, *pêcheuse*, 136  
*peignant*, *g* in, 223  
*peigne*, see *peindre*  
 " gender of, 122  
*peignis*, see *peindre*  
*peindre*, 175, 196, 223  
*peint* and *vendu*, 223  
*peintre*, from *pictor*, 189  
 " fem. use of, 141  
*pêle-mêle*, 231  
*peler*, 219  
*pénal*, plural of, 140  
*pencher (à)*, 259  
*pendant*, 236, 238  
 " *que*, 241  
*pendule*, gender of, 99  
*penser (à)*, 259  
 " mood after, 264  
*pensum*, plural of, 91  
*perdre*, gender of, 141A  
*père*, fem. form of, 95  
 Perfect Present tense, 177, 178  
 Perfect Present tense, uses of, 272  
 Perfect Past tense, 177, 178  
 Perfect Past tense, uses of, 275  
 Perfect Future tense, 177, 178  
 Perfect Future tense, uses of, 278  
*permettre (de)*, 258  
*perroquet*, fem. of, 95  
*perruche*, masc. of, 95  
*persévérer (à)*, 259  
*persil*, *l* silent in, 67, 6  
*persister (à)*, 259  
 Personal Pronouns, 145  
 Personal Pronouns, uses of, 283  
*personne*, double gender of, 99  
*personne*, power of, 235  
*persuader (de)*, 258  
*petit* compared, 131  
 " change of meaning according to position, 287  
*petit-pain*, compound word, 282, note  
*peu*, 231, 233  
 " comparison of, 234  
*peuple*, gender of, 120  
*peut-être*, 232  
*peux*, see *pouvoir*  
*ph* in a syllable, 7  
 " value of symbol in pronunciation, 77  
*phare*, gender of, 124  
*phénomène*, gender of, 122  
*-phe*, masc. noun ending in, 116

- Phonology, 5-82  
 Phrase accent, 15  
*pioneer*, how accented in English, 17  
*pire*, 139  
*pl* in a syllable, 7  
*placet*, plural of, 91  
*plage*, gender of, 117  
*plaindre*, 223  
     (*de*), 258  
*plaire*, like *taire*, 205  
     (*à*), 259  
*plaisant*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*plâtre*, gender of, 124  
*pleuvoir*, 209  
*plomb*, *b* silent in, 62  
*plu*, see *pleuvoir*  
 Plural of ordinary adjectives and substantives, 88  
     " history of *s* as a mark of, 139  
     " of words taken substantively, 89  
 Plural of proper names  
     90,  
     " of foreign words. 91  
     " of compound substantives and adjectives, 92  
     " irregularities in, caused by vocalisation of *l*, 140  
*plus-que-parfait*, pronunciation of, 59  
*plus tôt*, 228  
*plus*, 231  
*plut*, see *pleuvoir* and *plaire*  
*plutôt*, 231  
*poêle*, gender of, 99  
*poète*, fem. use of, 141  
*poignard*, etc., pronunciation of, 30  
*point*, affirmative power of, 235  
*poire*, gender of, 124  
*poivre*, gender of, 124  
*poix*, gender of, 111  
*pôle*, gender of, 120  
*police*, how accented in English, 17  
*polka*, gender of, 101  
*polype*, gender of, 141A  
*porc*, *c* silent in, 71  
*pore*, gender of, 124  
*porter*, model of conjugation in *-er*, 175, 190  
*postscriptum*, plural of, 91  
*poste*, gender of, 99  
*postérieur*, fem. of, 87  
 Possessive Pronouns, 149, 164, 165  
*pou*, plural of, 88  
*pouce*, gender of, 113,  
*poule*, masc. form of, 95  
*pouliche*, masc. of, 95  
*poulpe*, gender of, 141A  
*pour*, 236  
*pour l'amour de*, 237  
*pour peu que*, 241  
     " subjunctive after, 266  
*pour le coup*, 266  
*pour que*, 241  
*pourquoi*, position of, 288  
*pourrai*, see *pouvoir*  
*pour toujours*, 228  
*pouvoir*, 206  
*pourvu que*, 241  
     " subjunctive after, 266  
*pouvoir*, 209  
     " rendered by *may*, *can*, etc., 176  
*précepte*, gender of, 126  
*précipec*, gender of, 113  
*précisément*, from *précis*, 233  
*préfix*, fem. of, 87  
*premierement*, 230  
*prenant*, see *prendre*  
*prendre*, 207  
*prendre plaisir* (*à*), 259  
*préparer* (*se*) (*à*), 259  
 Prepositions, 236  
*près*, 229  
*près de*, 237  
 Present Participle, see *Participle*  
 Present stem, 178, 204  
 Present tenses, 178  
 Present tenses, uses of, 270, 279  
*présentement*, 228, 223, note,  
*presque*, 231  
*presser* (*se*) (*de*), 258  
*présumer*, subjunctive after, 264  
*prétendant*, frequent agreement of, 249, note  
*prétendre*, not followed by a preposition, 257  
*prêtre*, fem. of, 95  
     " from *presbyter*, 139  
*prêtresse*, masc. of, 95  
*prévale*, see *prévaloir*  
*prévaloir*, " *prévit*, see *prévoir*  
*prince*, *princesse*, 95  
*principe*, gender of, 123  
*pris*, see *prendre*  
     " observations on, 218  
*prison*, gender of, 106  
*proche*, 229, 236  
*proche de*, 237  
*produire*, 222  
*professeur*, fem. use of, 141  
*profondément*, from *profond*, 233  
*programme*, gender of, 121  
*promette* (*de*), 258  
*prompt*, pronunciation of, 61  
*prône*, gender of, 122  
*prononcer*, *on* in, 33  
 Pronouns, 145-162  
     " some uses of, 283  
     " personal, position of, 286  
 Pronunciation of Latin, 82  
 Proper substantives, 84  
 Proper names, plural of, 90  
 Proper names, gender of, 143  
*prophète*, fem. of, 95  
*proposer* (*se*) (*de*), 258

*propre*, change of meaning according to position, 287

*proverbe*, gender of, 112

*provoquer* (à), 259

*pu*, from *paître*

„ from *pouvoir*

*public*, fem. of, 87

*puis*, 228

*puis* (je), see *pouvoir*

*puisque*, 241

*puisse*, see *pouvoir*

*puits*, from *puteus*, 139

*punir* (de), 258

*pupitre*, gender of, 124

## Q

*q* final only in *cinq*, *coq*, 69

*q*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 69

*qua*, *u* how sounded in, 36

*quadrille*, double gender of, 99

Qualificative adjectives, 85, 88

*quand*, 228, 241

Quantity, rules on, 22

*quarantième*, from *quarante*, 133

*quatre*, *u* silent in, 116

„ *yeux*, 216, note

*quatrième*, 133

„ from *quatre*, 133

*quatrièmement*, 230

*que*, relative, 157

„ interrogative, 159

„ and *quoi* compared, 166

„ conjunction, 241, 273

„ in substantival subjunctive sentences, 264

*quel*, 156, 158

*quelconque*, 161, 171

*quelque*, indefinite pronoun, 161

*quei* . . *que*, 170

*quelque* . . *que*, 170

*quelque* (some), 169

*quelque chose*, gender of, 99

*quelqu'un*, substantival indefinite pron., 162

*quérir*, 208, note

*qui* (which), 157

„ (who), 157

*qui*? who? 159

*quiconque*, *u* silent in, 36

„ substantival indefinite pronoun, 162

*quiproquo*, plural of, 91

*quoi*, what, 157, 159

„ and *que* compared, 159, 166

„ in *je ne sais quoi*, 158, note

*quoique*, 241

„ subjunctive after, 266

## R

*r*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 65

*r*, rarely carried on, 65

-*r*, fem. nouns ending in, 107

*racheter*, 219

*rage*, gender of, 117, note

*raisonner*, *on* in, 39

*rançon*, gender of, 106

*rappeler* (se) (de), 258

*ras*, fem. of, 87, note

-*re*, number of verbs in, 175

-*re*, fourth conjugation, model 1, 194

-*re*, fourth conjugation, model 2, 195

-*re*, fourth conjugation, model 3, 196

-*re*, fourth conjugation, model 4, 197

-*re*, conjugation in, corresponds to Latin in -*ere*, 212

-*re*, masc. ending, 124

*recevoir* and *général* compared, 13

*recevoir*, conjugation of, 208

*récipissé*, plural of, 91

Reciprocal verbs, how conjugated, 184

*réclame*, double gender of, 99, 8

*reçois*, *reçoive*, see *recevoir*

*recommander* (de), 258

*recto*, plural of, 91

*reçu*, see *recevoir*

*réduire*, 222

„ (à), 259

Reflexive personal pronouns, 147

Reflexive verbs, model of, 198

Reflexive verbs take same inflexions as ordinary verbs, 184

Reflexive verbs, *être* used with, 184

Reflexive verbs, past participle in, 184

*refuser* (de), 258

*régal* and *regard* compared, 13

*régime*, gender of, 121

*régistre*, gender of, 124

*régne*, gender of, 122

*regretter* (de), 258

*reine*, 95

*réjouir* (se) (de), 258

*relâche*, double gender of, 99, 8

*relaps*, *s* in, 59, note

Relative Pronouns, 155

Relative and antecedent, agreement of, 250

*religieuse*, masc. form of, 95

*reliquat*, plural of, 91

*remède*, gender of, 114

*remercier* (de), 258

*remise*, double gender of, 99, 7

*rendez-vous*, plural of, 92

*renne*, generic name, 141A

*renoncer* (à), 259

*réparer*, gender of, 124

*repartir* and *répartir*,  
218

*repentir*, gender of, 98

„ (*se*), see *sentir*

„ (*se*) (*de*), 258

*répète*, *è* in, 27

*replet*, fem. of, 87

*reproche*, gender of, 118

*reps*, *s* in, 59, note

*rapu*, from *repaitre*, 221

*résigner* (*se*) (*à*), 259

*résolu*, see *résoudre*

*résolvant*, see *résoudre*

*résoudre*, 205

*résous*, see *résoudre*

*résoudre* (*se*) (*à*), 259

*ressemblant*, frequent

agreement of, 249,

*rester*, takes *être* or *avoir*,  
217

*résultant*, frequent agree-  
ment of, 249, note

*réussir* (*à*), 259

*rêve*, gender of, 128

*réverbère*, gender of, 124

*rh* = *r*, 7, note, 44

*rhume*, gender of, 121

*rien*, affirmative power  
of, 235

*rire*, 205, 218

„ (*de*), 258

„ gender of, 98

*risque*, gender of, 127

*risquer* (*de*), 258

Rivers, gender of, 143

*roi*, fem. of, 95

„ *oi* in, 30, 32

*roble*, gender of, 120

*rompt*, pronunciation of,  
61

*ronce*, gender of, 98

*rossignol*, gender of, 141A

*rôtissoire*, gender of,  
124

*rouge-gorge*, plural of, 92

*rougir* (*de*), 258

*routine*, English, accent  
in, 17

*royaume*, gender of, 121

“Rule of *s*,” 139

## S

*s* compared with *z*, 45

-*s* final in first person

singular, 215

*s*, how sounded, 59

-*s* singular substantival

ending, 88

*s* as a mark of plural,

88, 139

-*s*, fem. nouns ending in,

108

*s*, rule of, 139

*sable*, gender of, 120

*sabre*, gender of, 124

*sachant*, see *savoir*

*sache*, see *savoir*

*sacre*, gender of, 124

*sais*, see *savoir*

*sanglier*, fem. form of, 95

*sans*, 236

*sans doute*, 232

*sans que*, subjunctive

after, 266

*sarcasme*, gender of, 121

*sauf*, 236

*saurai*, see *savoir*

*savoir*, 209

„ gender of, 98

„ not followed by a

preposition, 257

*sceptre*, gender of, 124

Scheme of the conso-

nants, 46

*sculpter*, pronunciation

of, 61

*sculpteur*, fem. use of,

141

-*se*, masc. nouns ending

in, 125

*seant*, frequent agree-

ment of, 249, note

Seasons, gender of, 98

*sec*, fem. of, 87

*second* and *deuxième*, 133

*secondement*, 230

*secret*, fem. of, 87

*seigle*, gender of, 120

*seigneur* and *sire* com-

pared, 139

*seizième*, from *seize*, 133

*sel*, *e* in, 27

*selon*, 236

*selon que*, 241

*sembler*, not followed by

a preposition, 257

Sentence, Compound, 243

„ Co-ordinate, 243

„ Principal, 243

„ Simple, 243

„ Subordinate,

243

„ use of mood in

Principal, 261,

262

„ use of tense in

Principal, 270-

278

„ use of mood in

Subordinate,

263

„ use of tense in

Subordinate, 279

*sentir*, model of conjuga-

tion in *ir*, 175, 192

*sépia*, gender of, 101

*sept*, pronunciation of,

57, 61, 79

*septièmement*, 230

*sépulcre*, gender of, 124

*serai*, see *être*

*serin*, 95

*serpent*, generic name,

141A

*service*, gender of, 113

*servir*, see *sentir*, 192

*servir* (*à*), 259

*serviteur*, fem. of, 95

*seul*, change of meaning

according to position,

287

*seulement*, 231

Sex, substantives signify-

ing things with, 94

„ substantives signify-

ing things without,

96

*sexe*, gender of, 129

*shall*, rendered by *fal-*

*loir*, 177

*should*, rendered by *de-*

*voir*, 176

*si*, 231, 232, 241

*siècle*, gender of, 120c

*signe*, gender of, 122

*silence*, gender of, 113



Simple sentence, definition of, 243  
 Simple Present, 177, 182, 270  
   " Past, 177, 182, 273  
   " Future, 177, 182, 270  
*singe*, fem. form of, 95  
*sinon que*, 241  
*si peu que*, 241  
*sire* and *seigneur* compared, 139  
*site*, gender of, 126  
*six*, *x* = *s* in, 72, 79  
*sixièmement*, 230  
*sœur*, from *soror*, 139  
   " pronunciation of, 32  
   " masc. form of, 95  
*soi*, pronoun, 148  
*soif*, gender of, 104  
*sois*, see *être*  
*soit*, *oi* in, 219  
   " *t* in, 216  
*soit que*, 241  
   " subjunctive after, 266  
*soldat*, fem. use of, 141  
*somme*, double gender of, 99  
*sommes*, see *être*  
*son*, possessive pronoun, 150  
   " used instead of *sa*, 50  
*songe*, gender of, 117  
*songer* (*à*), 259  
*sort*, see *être*  
*sortir*, see *sentir*, 192  
   " takes *être* in compound tenses, 183, 217  
*sot*, fem. of, 87  
*souhaiter* (*de*), 258  
*soumettre* (*se*) (*à*), 259  
*soupçonner* subjunctive after, 264  
*soupçonner* (*de*), 258  
*soupirail*, plural of, 88  
*sourcil*, *l* silent in, 67  
*souris*, gender of, 141A  
*sous*, 236  
*souvenir* (*se*) (*de*), 258

*souvent*, 228  
*soyons*, see *être*  
 Spirants, 45  
*squelette*, gender of, 126, -*ss*, suffix, 95  
*store*, gender of, 124  
 Strong and weak verbs, 211  
 Strengthened syllable in verbs, 203, 219  
*style*, gender of, 120  
*su*, see *savoir*  
*subalterne*, fem. use of, 141  
 Subject, grammatical, 244, note  
 Subjective, 84, 139  
 Subjunctive mood, 182  
 Subjunctive mood, proper English of, 182  
 Subjunctive mood in subordinate sentences, 263  
 Subjunctive mood in principal sentence, 268  
 Subjunctive mood often used alone to express a wish, 268  
 Subordinate sentence, definition of, 243  
 Subordinate sentences, three kinds of, 263-269  
 Subordinate sentence, sequence of tense in, 279  
*substant*, frequent agreement of, 249, note  
 Substantives, see TABLE OF CONTENTS  
*sud*, pronunciation of, 58  
*suis*, see *être*  
*suis*, see *suivre*  
*suivant*, preposition, 238  
   " *que*, 241  
*suivre*, 205  
 Superfluous consonants, 43  
*supérieur*, fem. of, 87  
 Superlative, how formed, 131  
*supplier* (*de*), 258  
*supposé*, 236  
   " agreement of, 254, 4

*supposé que*, 241  
   " " subjunctive after, 266  
*sûr*, circumflex accent in, 10  
*sur*, 236  
*sur-le-champ*, 228  
 Syllables, 7  
 Symbols employed to represent vowel sounds, 19, 20, 41  
 Symbols employed to represent diphthong sounds, 22  
 Symbols employed to represent consonant sounds, 44, 45  
 Syntax, what it treats of, 243

## T

*t* compared with *d*, 45  
*t*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 57  
*t final* in 3rd person singular, 216  
*t*, fem. nouns in, 109  
*tabac*, *c* silent in, 71  
*tâcher* (*à*) (*de*), 260  
*taire*, 205  
*taisant*, see *taire*  
*tandis*, 228  
   " *que*, 241  
*tant*, 231  
*tant que*, 241  
*tantôt*, 228  
*taon*, pronunciation of, 39  
*tard*, 228  
*-tatem*, fem., Latin ending, 102  
*-té*, *-tié*, fem. nouns ending in, 102  
*-te*, masc. nouns ending in, 126  
*Te Deum*, plural of, 91  
*tel*, 161  
*télescope*, gender of, 116  
*télescope*, gender of, 123  
*temple*, gender of, 120

Temporal Conjunctions,  
241, 266

*tendant*, frequent agree-  
ment of, 249, note

*tenir*, 208, 259

Tenses, 177

„ auxiliaries of,  
176

„ formation of, 178

„ English of, 182,  
187

„ formed from La-  
tin, 214

„ uses of, 270-279

„ sequence of, 279

*tenter (de)*, 258

*tenu*, see *tenir*

*tête*, circumflex accent in,  
10, 27

-*teur*, words in, 95

*th* = *t* in sound, 7, 44

*th* in a syllable, 7

*th*, value of symbol in  
pronunciation, 75

*thaler*, plural of, 91

*théâtral*, plural of, 140

*théâtre*, gender of, 124

*thème*, gender of, 121

Third person used in di-  
rect address, 503

*tiens*, see *tenir*

*tige*, gender of, 117, note

*tigre*, fem. of, 95

*tigresse*, masc. of, 95

*timbre*, gender of, 124

*tins*, see *tenir*

*toi* declined, 148

*toi* in imperative mood  
instead of *te*, 147, 184

*toison*, gender of, 106,

*tomber*, takes *être* in  
compound tenses, 183,  
217

*ton*, possessive pronoun,  
150

Tonic accent in a word, 14

*tonnerre*, gender of, 124

*tôt*, 228

*tôt ou tard*, 228

*touchant*, 236, 238

*toujours*, 228

*tournevis*, pronunciation  
of, 59

*tour*, double gender of,  
99

*tourtereau*, *tourterelle*,  
95

*tout au plus*, 231

*tout*, indefinite pronoun,  
161

*tout auprès de*, 237

*tout autour*, 229

*tout-à-coup*, 231

*tout-à-fait*, 231

*tout-à-l'heure*, 228

*tout de suite*, 228

*toux*, gender of, 111

Towns, gender of, 143

*traduire*, tra- in, 222

*trahison*, gender of, 106

*traire*, 205

*traité*, gender of, 102

*traître*, fem. of, 95  
from *traditor*,

139

*traîtresse*, masc. of, 95

*traîtreusement*, 233

Transitive verbs, 249

*trapèze*, gender of, 130

*travail*, plural of, 88, 140

*travailler (à)*, 259

*travaux*, singular of, 88

*trayant*, see *traire*

Trees, gender of, 98

*trèfle*, gender of, 120

*très*, 231

*tribu*, gender of, 110

Trills, 45

*trio*, plural of, 91

*triomphe*, double gender  
of, 99

*troisièmement*, 230

*trumpette*, double gen-  
der of, 141

*trône*, gender of, 122

*trop*, 231, 233

*trouble*, gender of, 120

*trouver (à)*, 259

*truie*, masc. form of, 95

*tu*, pronoun, 146

*tu* (verb), see *taire*

*tube*, gender of, 112

*tumulte*, gender of, 126

*turc*, fem. of, 87

*tus*, see *taire*

## U

*u, û*, value of symbols in  
pronunciation, 36

-*u*, fem. nouns in, 120

-*ue*, masc. nouns in, 127

-*uge*, gender of nouns in,  
117

-*uire*, verbs in, 222

*utérîeur*, fem. of, 87

*ultimatum*, plural of, 91

*un, onze, oui, e* not cut  
off before, 25

*un, um*, symbol, value of,  
in pronunciation, 40

*uniformément*, from *uni-  
forme*, 233

## V

*v*, pronunciation of sym-  
bol, 64

*vacarme*, gender of, 121

*vacabond* (French) and  
*vagabond* (English),

accent in, compared,  
14, 6

*vague*, double gender of,  
99,

*vaille*, see *valoir*

*vaincre*, 205

*vainquant*, see *vaincre*

*vais*, see *aller*

*valoir*, 208

*vanter (se) (de)*, 258

*vapour* and *vapeur* com-  
pared, 14

*vas-y* for *va-y*, 50

*voudrai*, see *valoir*

*vauz*, see *valoir*

-*ve*, masc. nouns in, 128

*vécu*, see *vivre*

*vendre*, model verb, 194

*vendrai, viendrai*, com-  
pared, 223 (1)

*vendre, peindre*, com-  
pared, 223

*venu* and *peint*, 223, 4

*vengeur, vengeresse*, 136

*venir*, 183, 208

*véquis*, obsolete form for *vécus*  
*véranda*, gender of, 101  
 VERBS, see TABLE OF CONTENTS, p.  
*verbe*, gender of, 112  
*vérité*, gender of, 102  
*vermicelle*, gender of, 120  
*verrai*, see *voir*  
*verrat*, fem. form of, 95  
*verre*, gender of, 124  
*vers*, 236  
*verso*, plural of, 91  
*vertu*, gender of, 110  
*vestige*, gender of, 117  
*vêtir*, 205  
*vêt (il)*, see *vêtir*  
*vêtu*, see *vêtir*  
*ceuille*, see *vouloir*  
*vice*, gender of, 113  
*victoire*, gender of, 124  
*vieil*, 50  
*vicillot*, fem. of, 87  
*vieux*, fem. of, 87  
 „ usually precedes the noun, 287  
*vigne*, gender of, 98  
*vilain*, change of meaning according to position, 287  
*villa*, gender of, 101  
*village*, gender of, 117  
*vingt*, pronunciation of, 53  
 „ 132  
*violin*, accent in English, 17  
*violoncelle*, gender of, 120  
*viorne*, gender of, 98  
*vipère*, gender of, 141A  
*vis*, see *voir*  
*vis*, pronunciation of, 59  
 „ gender of, 108  
*visa*, plural of, 91

*vis-à-vis*, 233  
*vis-à-vis de*, 237  
*viser (à)*, 259  
*vite*, 233  
*vitrail*, plural of, 88  
*vitre*, 205  
*vocabulaire*, gender of, 124  
*voici*, how obtained, 238  
*voilà*, how obtained, 238  
*voile*, double gender of, 99  
*voir*, not followed by a preposition, 206, 257  
*voix*, gender of, 111  
*volontiers*, 231  
*volume*, gender of, 121  
*votre* and *vôtre*, 150  
*voudrais*, see *vouloir*  
*vouloir*, not followed by a preposition, 257  
 „ rendered by *will*, *would*, 176

Vowel-sounds, see  
 TABLE OF CONTENTS  
*vrai*, 233  
 „ change of meaning according to position, 287  
*vraiment*, from *vrai*, 232, 233  
*vu*, see *voir*  
*vu que*, 241

## W

*w*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 74  
*wagon*, *w* in, 74  
 Weak and strong verbs, 211  
*whig*, *w* in, 74  
*whisky*, *w* in, 74

*will*, rendered by *vouloir*, 177  
 Word accent, see *Accent*  
 Words, order of, in the sentence, 285  
*would*, rendered by *vouloir*, 176

## X

*x*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 73  
*x* in *aux amis*, 73, 2  
*-x*, masc. adjectival ending, 87  
*-x*, singular substantival ending, 88  
*x*, fem. nouns in, 111  
*-xe*, masc. nouns in, 129

## Y

*y*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 31  
*y* equal to *double i*, 31  
*y* used as a dative, 221  
*yacht*, pronunciation of, 55  
*yeux*, sing. of, 88  
*yeux* and *œils*, 140  
*yeuse*, gender of, 98

## Z

*z*, value of symbol in pronunciation, 60  
*z* final in substantives and adjectives, 88  
*-ze*, masc. nouns ending in, 130

# Dr. Wm. Smith's Educational Course.

---

The success attending the 'PRINCIPIA LATINA' and the 'INITIA GRÆCA,' which practical teachers have found *the easiest books for learning Latin and Greek*, has led to the application of the same method to the French and German Languages. There is an obvious advantage in a beginner learning a new language on the plan with which he is already familiar. These books combine the advantage of the older and more modern methods of instruction. Their main object is to make the study of the language as easy and simple as possible, to enable a beginner to acquire an accurate knowledge of the chief grammatical forms, to learn their usage by constructing simple sentences as soon as he commences the study of the language, and to accumulate gradually a stock of words useful in conversation as well as in reading.

---

## AN ENGLISH COURSE.

### SCHOOL MANUAL OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

With Copious Exercises. By DR. WM. SMITH and T. D. HALL, M.A. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

### PRIMARY ENGLISH GRAMMAR FOR ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS, WITH EXERCISES AND QUESTIONS. Based upon the above work. By T. D. HALL, M.A. 16mo. 1s.

SCHOOL MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY, PHYSICAL AND POLITICAL. By JOHN RICHARDSON, M.A. Post 8vo. 5s.

PRIMARY HISTORY OF BRITAIN, FOR ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS. Edited by WM. SMITH, D.C.L. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

## A GREEK COURSE.

- INITIA GRÆCA, PART I. A FIRST GREEK COURSE; containing Grammar, Delectus, Exercise Book, and Vocabularies. 12mo. 8s. 6d.
- INITIA GRÆCA, PART II. A READING BOOK; containing short Tales, Anecdotes, Fables, Mythology, and Grecian History. With a Lexicon. 12mo. 8s. 6d.
- INITIA GRÆCA, PART III. PROSE COMPOSITION; containing the Rules of Syntax, with copious Examples and Exercises. 12mo. 8s. 6d.
- SMALLER GREEK GRAMMAR. Abridged from CURTIUS. 12mo. 8s. 6d.
- THE GREEK ACCIDENCE. 12mo. 2s. 6d.
- 

## A LATIN COURSE.

- PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART I. A FIRST LATIN COURSE. A Grammar, Delectus, and Exercise Book, with Vocabularies. 12mo. 8s. 6d.
- PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART II. A READING BOOK. Ancient Mythology, Geography, Roman Antiquities, and History. With Notes and a Dictionary. 12mo. 8s. 6d.
- PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART III. A POETRY BOOK.  
1. Easy Hexameters and Pentameters. 2. Eclogæ Ovidianæ. 3. Prosody and Metre. 4. First Latin Verse Book. 12mo. 8s. 6d.
- PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART IV. PROSE COMPOSITION. Rules of Syntax, with Examples, Explanations of Synonyms, and Exercises on the Syntax. 12mo. 8s. 6d.
- PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART V. Short Tales and Anecdotes from Ancient History, for Translation. 12mo. 8s.
- LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY, arranged according to Subjects and Etymology; with a First Latin-English Dictionary to Phædrus, Cornelius Nepos, and Cæsar's "Gallic War." 12mo. 8s. 6d.
- SMALLER LATIN GRAMMAR. Abridged from the Student's Latin Grammar. 12mo. 8s. 6d.









